



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

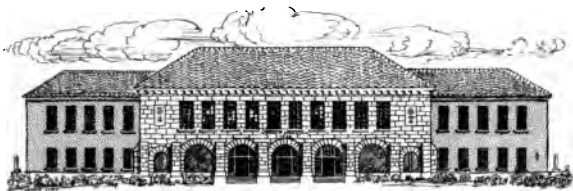
TX 478.21 .S420
Scott, Harry Fletcher,
Elementary Latin : an introductory cours

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 7045

ELEMENTARY
LATIN
—
SCOTT

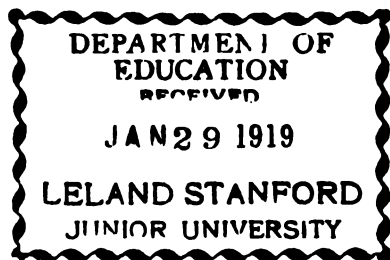


SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES







PAS DE L'ECLUSE

Pass by which the Helvetians left their country. (See page 140.)

Lake Classical Series

ELEMENTARY LATIN

AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE

BY

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT, A. M.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO HIGH SCHOOL



SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO **NEW YORK**

597652

C

COPYRIGHT 1915

BY

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

PREFACE

In the preparation of these lessons, the author has kept in view the necessity for simplicity of statement and for the avoidance of unnecessary details. The purpose has been to furnish drill on the forms and constructions of most frequent occurrence, leaving the more difficult syntactical relations and the forms less frequently employed for a later point in the course. A few topics included in the lessons near the end of the book have been given place in order to meet the needs of teachers who prefer a more complete presentation of Latin grammar in the first year. These topics may, however, be omitted and the work of the lessons made to consist of the translation exercises and drill on the essential constructions and forms previously given.

Instead of the usual arrangement of lessons which must be divided into two or three assignments, the plan has been adopted of providing short lessons which can usually be covered in single recitations. Naturally, no such plan can be made to correspond absolutely to the needs of every class, and occasionally a teacher may find it necessary to omit or to leave for later review, part of the exercises of a lesson. But the presentation of forms and syntax in small units will, it is hoped, tend to prevent confusion in the mind of the pupil and to aid the teacher in planning the work of the class.

The number of new words in each lesson has been kept as nearly uniform as possible and review lessons have been provided for special drill on vocabulary. These review lessons, however, with the exception of the first and second, are not an essential part of the plan of the book and may be omitted by teachers who prefer to arrange reviews in a different way. In connection with these lessons, lists of

English derivatives have been given which may serve to relate the work in Latin more closely to the pupil's study of English, and to make clear the great importance of the Latin element in the English language. The vocabulary is for the greater part based on Caesar.

The reading lessons are planned to make the translation of Caesar easier, by giving in simple Latin the story of the first two books of the Gallic war, and by the frequent use of phrases and constructions from Caesar. The pupil who studies Latin but one year will at least have the opportunity to learn something of Caesar's narrative which may contribute to his interest in ancient history.

The selections from Eutropius are based on the text of Ruhl, with some changes and omissions. Boys and girls in the high school usually read Eutropius with interest, and since to many the tales of early Rome are unfamiliar, a good introduction to Roman history is furnished by this material.

The recommendations of the Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature have been followed, with a few exceptions. The name "past" instead of "past descriptive" has been used in the indicative, and a different term from that suggested by the Committee has been employed to designate conditional sentences with the present and past tenses of the indicative. Some of the classifications recommended by the Committee have been omitted as unnecessary for first year work.

Acknowledgment is made of the many helpful suggestions which were received from Professor Frederick W. Sanford of the University of Nebraska, Professor Charles Knapp of Barnard College, Miss Mildred Dean of the Central High School of Washington, D. C., Professor Arthur Tappan Walker of the University of Kansas, and Professor Rollin H. Tanner of Illinois College, who read the manuscript. Professor Edward Capps of Princeton University, editor of the Lake Classical Series, has also given the book the benefit

of his scholarly judgment on many points. Some features which have been most heartily commended by those to whom the manuscript has been submitted are due to the suggestions of the late Professor H. W. Johnston of the University of Indiana, to whom the plan of the lessons was submitted shortly before his death.

Chicago, Illinois, May, 1915.

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS	xv
INTRODUCTION: SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, ACCENT . . .	1
LESSON I. USE OF CASE FORMS IN LATIN AND ENGLISH. THE ARTICLE. POSITION OF THE VERB	4
II. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN CASE. PREDICATE ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS	6
III. INDIRECT OBJECT. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. POSITION OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE	8
IV. THE ABLATIVE. THE VOCATIVE. THE FIRST DECLENSION	10
V. PERSONAL ENDINGS IN THE ACTIVE. AGREEMENT OF THE VERB. THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE	13
FIRST REVIEW LESSON	16
VI. GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION. THE SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER NOUNS IN -um	17
VII. APPPOSITION. THE SECOND DECLENSION, NOUNS IN -us AND -ir	19
VIII. THE SECOND DECLENSION, NOUNS IN -er . THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF sum	22
IX. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS WITH THE MASCULINE IN -us	24
X. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS WITH THE MASCULINE IN -er . POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	26
SECOND REVIEW LESSON	29
XI. DEMONSTRATIVES. DECLENSION OF hic	31
XII. THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT PASSIVE INDICATIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT	33
XIII. DECLENSION OF ille AND ipse . THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT	35
XIV. THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE	37
XV. THE PAST ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	40

	PAGE
THIRD REVIEW LESSON	43
XVI. DECLENSION OF <i>is</i>. THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS .	44
XVII. THE PAST PASSIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS .	47
XVIII. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	49
XIX. POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON. THE PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF <i>sum</i>	51
XX. THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE	54
FOURTH REVIEW LESSON	57
XXI. THE PAST PARTICIPLE	58
XXII. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB. THE STEMS OF THE VERB	60
XXIII. THE PAST PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE. THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE	63
XXIV. THE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION	65
XXV. THE PAST PERFECT PASSIVE AND THE FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE INDICATIVE. SYNOPSIS OF VERBS .	67
FIFTH REVIEW LESSON	69
XXVI. THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE	70
XXVII. THE THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>ō</i> VERBS. THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE	72
XXVIII. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE. THE SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES	74
XXIX. THE PAST INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	76
XXX. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME	77
SIXTH REVIEW LESSON	80
XXXI. THE THIRD CONJUGATION, <i>-ō</i> VERBS, PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE	81
XXXII. REVIEW OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN THE INDICATIVE	83
XXXIII. REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM. VARIATION FROM THE NORMAL WORD ORDER	87
XXXIV. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE IN <i>-ius</i>	90
XXXV. THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS	92

CONTENTS

xi

	PAGE
SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON	95
XXXVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS (Continued). THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE	96
XXXVII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, MASCULINE AND FEMININE 1-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS	99
XXXVIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, NEUTER 1-STEMS. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION	102
XXXIX. THE THIRD DECLENSION, IRREGULAR AND EXCEPTIONAL 1-STEMS	104
XL. DECLENSION OF <i>idem</i> . THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE	106
EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON	108
XLI. THE PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE	110
XLII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER	112
XLIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued). ORDER OF WORDS IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES	114
XLIV. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN. AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE	117
XLV. THE FOURTH DECLENSION	118
NINTH REVIEW LESSON	120
XLVI. DECLENSION OF <i>domus</i> . THE LOCATIVE CASE	121
XLVII. NUMERALS. DECLENSION OF <i>duo</i> AND <i>três</i>	123
XLVIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION	127
XLIX. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT. THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH	129
I. CONJUGATION OF <i>eô</i> . THE ABLATIVE OF ROUTE	131
TENTH REVIEW LESSON	133
LI. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION	135
LII. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH	137
LIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	139
LIV. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued). THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON	141
LV. ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY. THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE	143

	PAGE
ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON	146
LVI. THE GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION. THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION	147
LVII. THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS	149
LVIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	151
LIX. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE. THE ABLATIVE OF RE- SPECT	153
LX. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	155
TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON	157
LXI. THE CONJUGATION OF possum	159
LXII. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE	161
LXIII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN. ENCLITIC USE OF cum	163
LXIV. THE INFINITIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS, COM- plete	165
LXV. THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. THE IN- FINITIVES OF sum AND eō	167
THIRTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	170
LXVI. THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE	170
LXVII. THE CONJUGATION OF ferō	173
LXVIII. SYNOPSIS OF possum AND ferō	175
LXIX. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJU- GATIONS	177
LXX. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJU- GATIONS. THE ABLATIVE WITH ūtor , ETC.	180
FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	183
LXXI. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN - īō . THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE WITH CERTAIN PAS- SIVE VERBS	184
LXXII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES	187
LXXIII. DECLENSION OF quidam AND quisque . IMPERSONAL VERBS	189
LXXIV. SEMI-DEPONENTS. THE ENCLITIC -que	192
LXXV. DECLENSION OF aliquis AND quisquam . THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE	194
FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	196
LXXVI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	197

CONTENTS

xiii

	PAGE
LXXVII. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH ut AND nē . THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	199
LXXVIII. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF sum AND possum	202
LXXIX. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE. THE PAST SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS	204
LXXX. THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PRESENT AND PAST SUBJUNCTIVE OF ferō AND eō	207
SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	209
LXXXI. THE PAST SUBJUNCTIVE OF sum AND possum . CLAUSES OF RESULT	210
LXXXII. THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	212
LXXXIII. THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	214
LXXXIV. INDIRECT DISCOURSE	216
LXXXV. INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued). THE CONJUGATION OF eō COMPLETED	219
SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	220
LXXXVI. TENSE OF SUBJUNCTIVES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION WITH cum	221
LXXXVII. THE CONJUGATION OF fiō . SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT	224
LXXXVIII. Cum CAUSAL CLAUSES. THE GENITIVE OF MATERIAL	226
LXXXIX. THE CONJUGATION OF volō . Cum ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES	228
XC. THE CONJUGATION OF nōlō . CONSTRUCTIONS WITH EXPRESSIONS OF FEAR	230
EIGHTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	232
XCI. THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE. THE DATIVE OF AGENT	233
XCII. THE CONJUGATION OF mālō . THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING	235
XCIII. THE SUPINE. REVIEW OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS	237
XCIV. THE GERUND	240
XCV. THE GERUNDIVE	243
NINETEENTH REVIEW LESSON	246
XCVI. REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES. NEGATIVE COMMANDS	247
XCVII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	249

	PAGE
XCVIII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT. REVIEW OF PREPOSITIONS	251
XCIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES FUTURE LESS VIVID. DE- CLENSION OF <i>isto</i>	253
C. THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE. THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY AT- TRACTION	255
TWENTIETH REVIEW LESSON	258
SELECTIONS FROM EUTROPIUS	259
NOTES TO EUTROPIUS	269
THE FORMATION OF LATIN WORDS	277
FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES	279
APPENDIX	281
VOCABULARY	313
INDEX	346

ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

	PAGE
FRONTISPIECE	
MAP SHOWING MODERN INFLUENCE OF LATIN	xix
ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY	7
ROMAN FARMER WITH PLOW	12
ROMAN WALL IN BRITAIN	15
THE APPIAN WAY IN THE TIME OF AUGUSTUS	20
ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS	28
ROMAN MATRONS OFFERING GIFTS	30
ROMAN FESTIVAL PROCESSION	39
ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP	40
VICTIMS FOR A ROMAN SACRIFICE	45
ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD	48
ROMAN SHIELD	50
GATE IN THE WALL OF MODERN ROME	53
RUINS OF ROMAN AQUEDUCT	62
FRAGMENT OF PAPYRUS ROLL FROM HERCULANEUM	75
ROMAN CENTURION	77
BRIDGE OVER THE TIBER	86
THE ROMAN FORUM IN ITS PRESENT CONDITION	89
MANNER OF WEARING THE TOGA	99
DRAWING ON THE OUTER WALL OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII	109
ARCH OVER ROMAN ROAD	116
ROMAN OIL VAULT	122
GAUL IN CAESAR'S TIME (MAP)	123
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR	124
ROMAN JAVELINS	128
ROMAN COINS	130
ROMAN DRINKING CUPS	138
ROMAN SOLDIERS STORMING A TOWN	145
ROMAN SPOONS AND BOWL	146
ROMAN TEMPLE AT CORI	150
THE CAPITOLINE HILL (RESTORATION)	160

	PAGE
THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORATION)	169
ROMAN COIN	175
STREET OF POMPEII	186
ROMAN MOSAIC	191
ROMAN SEAL RINGS	201
ROMAN HELMETS	203
CAESAR'S TRIUMPH	206
ROMAN CHARIOT RACE	218
INTERIOR OF A HOUSE AT POMPEII (RESTORATION)	223
CIRCUS MAXIMUS	239
VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL	241
ROMAN KITCHEN RANGE	246
VIEW ON THE APPIAN WAY	252

THE VALUE OF LATIN

A very large proportion of the words of the English language is derived from Latin. In some instances words have been taken directly, without change of form. For example, *terminus*, *stimulus*, *veto*, and *affidavit*, are Latin words in the form in which they were used by the Romans. Other words first became a part of the French language and after being modified by the pronunciation of that language were taken into English in this changed form. Such are *humble*, *count*, *blame*, and *sure*. The numerous English adjectives ending in *-ent* and *-ant*, such as *patient*, *intelligent*, *independent*, and *defiant*, are derived from Latin participles either directly or through the French. As an illustration of how large this element is in English, nearly three-fourths of the words in the Preamble to the Constitution of the United States (with the exception of prepositions and articles) are of Latin origin.

The study of Latin is, therefore, to a large extent, the study of the history of our own language. But it is more than merely a study of its history. One who has become familiar with the derivation of the words which he uses is likely to speak and write with greater clearness and accuracy. For this reason the best schools which afford training for those who wish to become newspaper writers advise or require the study of Latin as a preparation. For the same reason, law schools require that a student shall have some knowledge of Latin, and prominent lawyers have said that no other training can give the command of language which is necessary for the largest success in the legal profession. Schools of engineering advise or require Latin because the Latin student usually has the ability to state a plan of work

or describe what is to be done with greater clearness than one who has not had the training afforded by Latin.

For business life the study of Latin is valuable in that it gives one a larger English vocabulary and through the experience of translation affords training in the careful choice of words. Even a brief course, of two or three years will give much help in these respects. One who has learned to look carefully at words is more likely to avoid errors in spelling and in the structure of sentences. Inaccuracy in the use of language may be the cause of failure in many situations in the business world. In proportion as one gains positions of greater importance, the ability to speak and write clearly and correctly becomes more valuable. The opportunities for success for one who lacks this ability are rapidly becoming less.

Another reason why the study of Latin is of importance to the English-speaking person is that his own literature is made clearer thereby. The greatest works of English literature have been written by men who knew Latin, and they contain innumerable passages which cannot be understood without a knowledge of Latin. This does not mean simply Latin quotations, but references and forms of expression in English. And this is true not merely of the writers of an early period, but of some of the most modern. Many English poems have as their titles famous Latin phrases which one must understand in order to appreciate the poems themselves.

The modern languages which have been developed from Latin are very important and widely spoken. Those of Italy, France, Spain, Portugal, and Roumania are modern forms of Latin. And since the languages spoken in the greater part of South America, and Mexico, and in parts of the southwestern states of our own country and of Canada belong to this group, they are of very direct concern to us. Further, one who wishes to become familiar with the great literatures of the world or to be able to read important scientific books must



MAP SHOWING THE INFLUENCE OF LATIN ON THE LANGUAGES OF MODERN EUROPE

Heavy shading indicates languages directly derived from Latin
 Light shading indicates languages largely influenced by Latin

know at least one of these languages. If he knows Latin he has the foundation of all of them and can learn any one of them with much less effort because of that knowledge.

In the Latin language there is also a great literature which one will appreciate better if he reads it in the original form. The works of the Roman poets and historians have had a powerful influence on the literature of modern nations. They are often quoted today, and parts of them have been imitated many times. In reading them one finds the source of a great number of the mythological stories which have been retold in so many forms in later literature. These stories become more vivid and real as they are read in the language in which they were originally written.

In these ways and in others, the study of Latin is closely connected with the life of the modern world, and it cannot well be disregarded by any one who wishes to become in the best sense efficient and intelligent.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no *j* or *w*.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

2. The vowels, as in English, are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. The other letters are consonants. The letter *i* is usually a consonant when it stands at the beginning of a word and is followed by a vowel, or when it stands between vowels within a word.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

3. The vowels in Latin are either long or short. In this book long vowels are indicated by a mark placed above them. A vowel which is unmarked is short. The vowel sounds are indicated in the following table:

<i>ā</i> = <i>a</i> in "father"	<i>a</i> = <i>a</i> in "comma" ¹ ✓
<i>ē</i> = <i>a</i> in "fade"	<i>e</i> = <i>e</i> in "net"
<i>ī</i> = <i>i</i> in "machine"	<i>i</i> = <i>i</i> in "this"
<i>ō</i> = <i>o</i> in "holy"	<i>o</i> = <i>o</i> in "domain"
<i>ū</i> = <i>u</i> in "rude"	<i>u</i> = <i>u</i> in "full"

y is seldom used. Its sound is the same as that of *u* in the French language or *ü* in German.

¹ Like *ā*, but pronounced more quickly.

4. The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions are to be noted:

c and **ch** have the sound of *k*.

g has only one sound, that heard in *go*.

i as a consonant is equivalent to *y* in *yes*.

s has only the sound heard in *say*.

t always has the sound heard in *top*. It does not combine with **i** to give the sound of *sh* as in *nation*.

v has the sound of *w*.

x has only the sound of *ks*, as in *exercise*.

bs and **bt** are equivalent to *ps* and *pt*.

ph and **th** are nearly equivalent to *p* and *t*. ✓

DIPHTHONGS

5. A diphthong is a combination of two vowels in one syllable. The diphthongs are **ae**, **au**, **ei**, **eu**, **oe**, and **ui**. Their sounds are as follows:

ae = *ai* in "aisle"

eu = *eu* in "feud" ✓

au = *ou* in "out"

oe = *oi* in "boil"

ei = *ei* in "vein"

ui = almost¹ *ui* in "ruin"

SYLLABLES

6. (1) A syllable must contain a vowel or a diphthong, and may contain also one or more consonants.

(2) A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: **pō-nō**, **ha-be-ō**.

(3) Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows. But if the second of two consonants is **l** or **r**, and if the combination can be pronounced at the beginning of a word, as **bl**, **br**, etc., the two are taken with the vowel which follows, like a single consonant:² **man-dā-re**, **car-dō**; but **fe-bris**, **ā-cris**.

¹ The *u* is shorter than in the English word, and the vowels are more closely blended.

² In the division of a compound verb into syllables in writing or printing, the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb.

LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

7. (1) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **dō-num, cau-tus.**

(2) A syllable is long if it contains a short vowel followed by two consonants, except **bl, br,** or some other combination of a single consonant with **l** or **r** which can be pronounced at the beginning of a word: **con-dō, mit-tō.**

(3) All other syllables are short: **me-mor, a-grī.**

a. **x** and **z** have the value of two consonants because they represent a combination of sounds. A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by either of these double consonants.

ACCENT

8. (1) In a word of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable.

(2) In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last, if it is long, otherwise on the second syllable from the last: **lū'men, au-dī're, con-ten'tus, me'mi-nī.**

(3) The syllable before the last is called the *penult*, the second from the last is called the *antepenult*.

LESSON I

NOUN INFLECTION: THE ARTICLE: POSITION OF VERB

THE USE OF CASE FORMS IN ENGLISH

9. In English, one form of the pronoun is used as the subject of the sentence, a different form as the object of a verb or of a preposition, and a third form to express possession.

He walks (subject).

We see *him* (object).

His book is new (possessive).

CASE FORMS OF LATIN NOUNS

10. In Latin, nouns as well as pronouns have different forms to show how they are used in sentences.

Puella (subject) *ambulat*, *the girl walks*.

Puellam (object) *vidēmus*, *we see the girl*.

Liber puellae (possessive), *the girl's book*.

NAMES OF CASES

11. The subject case is called the Nominative, the object case is called the Accusative, and the case of the possessor is called the Genitive.

NOM. puella (subject).

GEN. puellae (possessive).

ACC. puellam (object).

TRANSLATION OF THE GENITIVE

12. The genitive is sometimes translated by the English possessive, as in the example above, and sometimes by *of* and the noun. Puellae may be translated *the girl's* or *of the girl*.

THE ARTICLE

13. The Latin has no article. With the English translation of a Latin noun, *a*, *an*, or *the* is generally supplied as the sense requires. Puella means *the girl* or *a girl* according to the meaning of the sentence in which it stands.

POSITION OF THE VERB

14. The verb of a Latin sentence, unless it is especially emphasized, usually stands at the end of the sentence.¹

15. VOCABULARY

fēmina , woman	amat , loves
filia , daughter	dat , gives
puella , girl	laudat , praises
rosa , rose	vocat , calls

EXERCISES

16. 1. Fēmina puellam vocat.
 2. Puella fēminam vocat.
 3. Filia rosam dat.
 4. Fēmina rosam puellae laudat.
 5. Puella filiam fēminae amat.
 6. Filia fēminae rosam laudat.
17. 1. The woman loves the girl.
 2. The girl loves the woman.
 3. The woman praises the girl.
 4. The woman's daughter gives a rose.
 5. The girl praises the woman's rose.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Divide the words of the vocabulary into syllables and indicate the accent of each word. (2) Give the genitive and the accusative of each noun in the vocabulary. (3) In the following sentences point out the subjects: (a) The boy has a gun. (b) We missed the first train. (c) You did not see us yesterday. (d) The engine of the aeroplane is small. (e) The boy's gun is not loaded. (f) The friends of this girl sent presents. (4) In the sentences of (3) point out the objects, and also the words or phrases which express possession. (5) Name the case in which each noun or pronoun in these sentences would stand if translated into Latin.

¹ The forms of the verb meaning *to be*, when equivalent to the English *there is*, or *there are*, usually stand first in the clause.

LESSON II

ADJECTIVES: PREDICATE ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS

CASE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES

18. Adjectives as well as nouns have different case forms in Latin. An adjective agrees in case with the noun to which it belongs.

NOM.	<u>puella bona</u> , a good girl.
GEN.	<u>puellae bonae</u> , of a good girl.
ACC.	<u>puellam bonam</u> , a good girl.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

19. An adjective which tells some quality of a noun is placed after the noun to which it belongs, unless especially emphasized: Fēmina benigna, the kind woman.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

20. An adjective which is connected with a noun or pronoun by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a Predicate Adjective.

The girl is *good*.

A predicate adjective agrees with the subject of its clause.

Fēmina benigna est, the woman is kind.

PREDICATE NOUNS

21. A noun which is connected with the subject by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a Predicate Noun. A predicate noun stands in the same case as the subject.

Puella filia fēminae est, the girl is the woman's daughter.

22.

VOCABULARY

<u>benigna</u> , kind	<u>insula</u> , island
<u>bona</u> , good	<u>statua</u> , statue
<u>magna</u> , large	<u>est</u> , is
<u>pulchra</u> , beautiful	<u>et</u> , and

EXERCISES

23. 1. Puella benigna est.
 2. Statua pulchra est.
 3. Īnsula magna et pulchra est.
 4. Filia fēminae benignae bona est.
 5. Filia fēminae bonae benigna est.
 6. Fēmina statuam pulchram laudat.
 7. Puella fēminam benignam amat.
24. 1. The woman is kind.
 2. The rose is beautiful.
 3. The woman's daughter is a good girl.
 4. The girl gives a beautiful rose.
 5. The woman praises the large statue.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Name the case of each noun in the sentences of 23 and tell why each noun stands in the case in which it appears. (2) Point out the predicate adjectives in the sentences of 23 and 24. (3) Point out the predicate nouns and the objects in the following sentences and state what the case of each would be in Latin: (a) The man was a stranger. (b) I have had no dinner. (c) You have been the leader. (d) This boy will never be a good player. (e) We saw your friend yesterday.



ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

LESSON III

INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES: POSITION OF GENITIVE AND DATIVE**THE INDIRECT OBJECT**

25. The word denoting the person to whom something is given or said or shown is called the Indirect Object.

He told the *boy* an interesting story.

The girl gave her *sister* a picture.

THE DATIVE AS INDIRECT OBJECT

26. In Latin, the case of the indirect object is called the Dative. Nouns which end in **-a** in the nominative have the same form for the dative as for the genitive in the singular.

Fēmina puellae rosam dat, *the woman gives the girl a rose*.

a. In English the indirect object is often expressed by "to" and the noun.

The woman gives a rose *to the girl*.

In Latin the phrase *to the girl* is expressed by the one word, **puellae**.

THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

27. The dative is also used in sentences and phrases containing adjectives of attitude or quality or relation, such as those meaning *angry, kind, friendly, pleasing, useful, near*, to name the person or thing toward which the attitude or quality or relation is directed or in reference to which it is said to exist: **Puellae benigna**, *kind to the girl*.

POSITION OF THE GENITIVE AND THE DATIVE

28. (1) A noun in the genitive case, when not emphasized, commonly stands after the word to which it belongs.

(2) A noun in the dative case, when not emphasized, commonly stands before the word to which it belongs.

VERB ENDINGS OF THE THIRD PERSON

29. Verbs ending in -t are in the third person, singular number. The third person plural ends in -nt.

SING. **laudat**, *praises*.

PLU. **laudant**, *praise*.

30.

VOCABULARY

agricola , farmer	grāta , pleasing
amicitia , friendship	tua , your, yours
aqua , water	tibi , to you (<i>dative</i>)
nauta , sailor	portat , carries

EXERCISES

31. 1. Puella aquam portat.
 2. Amicitia tibi grāta est.
 3. Nauta et fēmina puellam laudant.
 4. Amicitia tua nautae est grāta.
 5. Puella fēminae (*dative*) benigna est.
 6. Agricola puellae rosam dat.
 7. Puella filiam agricolae amat.
32. 1. The good daughter gives a rose to the woman.
 2. The girl and the woman call the sailor.
 3. The large rose is pleasing to you.
 4. Your friendship is pleasing to the good girl.
 5. The farmer and the sailor praise the statue.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the dative and the accusative forms of the nouns in the vocabulary above. (2) Give the third person plural of the verbs in the vocabulary of Lesson I. (3) Name the case which may be used after adjectives meaning *friendly*, *unfriendly*, *pleasing*, *opposed*, *injurious*. (4) Point out the indirect objects and also the direct objects in the following sentences: (a) They told us the reason for this. (b) No one gave the tramp money. (c) Who gave your brother this knife? (d) He said this to his father.

LESSON IV

THE ABLATIVE: THE VOCATIVE: THE FIRST DECLENSION

THE ABLATIVE CASE

33. The case used in Latin to express relations which are indicated in English by the prepositions *from*, *in*, and *with* is called the Ablative. There are additional uses of this case which have been developed from these. Latin prepositions are sometimes used with the ablative.

ex silvā, *from the forest.*

in silvā, *in the forest.*

cum nautā, *with the sailor.*

a. The form of the ablative singular is to be distinguished from that of the nominative singular by the final long **a** in such nouns as those given above.

NOM. **silva.**

ABL. **silvā.**

THE VOCATIVE CASE

34. The case used in Latin to name the person directly addressed is called the Vocative. In most nouns the vocative singular is identical in form with the nominative singular. The vocative plural is always identical with the nominative plural.

Filia tua, Cornēlia, pulchra est, *Cornelia, your daughter is beautiful.*

POSITION OF THE VOCATIVE

35. In Latin, the vocative regularly stands after one or more words in the sentence, as in the example above. Its English equivalent usually stands either at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

THE FIRST DECLENSION

36. The nouns which have been given thus far belong to what is called the First Declension. They are declined in full through the singular and plural according to the following model:¹

ROSA, *rose*

	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
NOM.	rosa,	<i>a rose</i> (subject or predicate)	-a
GEN.	rosae,	<i>of a rose</i>	-ae
DAT.	rosae,	<i>to or for a rose</i>	-ae
ACC.	rosam,	<i>a rose</i> (object)	-am
ABL.	rosā,	<i>from, in, with a rose</i>	-ā
	PLURAL		
NOM.	rosae,	<i>roses</i> (subject or predicate)	-ae
GEN.	rosārum,	<i>of roses</i>	-ārum
DAT.	rosis,	<i>to or for roses</i>	-is
ACC.	rosās,	<i>roses</i> (object)	-ās
ABL.	rosis,	<i>from, in, with roses</i>	-is

a. The genitive singular ending, -ae, printed after a word in the vocabulary shows that the word belongs to the first declension.

IDENTICAL FORMS

37. The form **rosae** may be a genitive singular, a dative singular, a nominative plural, or a vocative plural. The meaning of the rest of the sentence will usually make it possible to determine what is the case of a doubtful form.

THE BASE

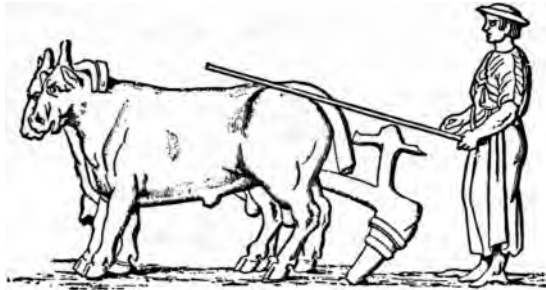
38. The part of a noun to which the terminations are added and which is not changed in declension, is called the Base. The base of **rosa** is **ros-**. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

¹ The noun *filia* has the irregular form *filiaibus* in the dative and ablative plural.

39.

VOCABULARY

Cornēlia , Cornelia (<i>a woman's name</i>)	cum , <i>prep. with abl.</i> , with
silva , -ae, forest	properat , hastens
ambulat , walks	ē, ex , ¹ <i>prep. with abl.</i> , from,
habitat , lives, dwells	out of
	in , in, on



ROMAN FARMER WITH PLOW

EXERCISES

40. 1. Silva magna tibi est grāta. 2. Agricola in silvā magnā est. 3. Fēmina cum filiā in insulā habitat. 4. Cornēlia ex silvā properat. 5. Filiae agricolae rosam magnam laudant. 6. Puellae, Cornēlia, in silvā ambulant. 7. Amīcitia fēminārum tibi grāta est. 8. Fēmina puellīs rosās dat.

41. 1. The sailors live on the large island. 2. The woman walks with the girls. 3. The rose is pleasing to the girls. 4. The farmer hastens from the forest. 5. The woman praises the farmer's daughters.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the case terminations of the first declension in the singular and plural. (2) Decline the nouns in the vocabularies of this lesson and of the preceding lesson. (3) Name the case of each noun in 40. (4) Point out the subjects of the sentences in 41. (5) Point out a direct object in 41.

¹ Before vowels and *h*, *ex* is used, before most consonants, *ē*.

LESSON V

PRESENT INDICATIVE: AGREEMENT OF VERB:
THE INFINITIVE: FIRST CONJUGATION

THE THREE FORMS OF THE ENGLISH VERB

42. The English verb has three forms for the present tense; *walks*, *does walk*, and *is walking* are all present. In Latin, there is only one form for this tense. The form **ambulat** is translated *walks*, or *is walking*, or *does walk*, as the sense requires. **Nōn ambulat** is translated *does not walk*, or *is not walking*. **Ubi puella habitat** is translated *Where does the girl live?* or *Where is the girl living?*

PERSONAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

43. The form **portō** is translated *I carry* (*am carrying*, *do carry*). The subject *I* is indicated by the ending **-ō**, and a pronoun is not expressed unless the subject is emphasized, or contrasted with another word.

In the form **portat**, the ending **-t** shows that the verb is third person, singular number. If no subject is expressed in the Latin, a pronoun of the third person, *he*, *she*, or *it*, is regularly to be supplied in translation. Thus **est** may be translated *he is*, or *she is*, or *it is*.

The other personal pronouns when not emphatic are likewise indicated as subjects by verb endings.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB

44. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

THE INFINITIVE

45. The present active infinitive of **portō** is **portāre**, *to carry*. All verbs given thus far, except the verb meaning *to be*, form the present active infinitive with the termination **-āre**: **laudāre**, *to praise*; **amāre**, *to love*.

a. The infinitive **dare**, *to give*, is slightly irregular, in that the **a** is short.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

46. Verbs which have the infinitive termination **-āre** form what is called the First Conjugation.

The forms of the first conjugation in the present tense, indicative mood, active voice, are as follows:

SINGULAR		PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. portō,	<i>I carry, (am carrying, do carry)</i>	-ō (<i>I</i>)
2. portās,	<i>you (singular) carry, etc.</i>	-s (<i>you</i>) ¹
3. portat,	<i>he, she, it carries, etc.</i>	-t (<i>he, she, it</i>)
PLURAL		
1. portāmus,	<i>we carry, etc.</i>	-mus (<i>we</i>)
2. portātis,	<i>you (plural) carry, etc.</i>	-tis (<i>you</i>)
3. portant,	<i>they carry, etc.</i>	-nt (<i>they</i>)

a. In the vocabulary, either the infinitive or its termination is printed after the first form given, to indicate the conjugation.

b. The main body of the verb, ending in the characteristic vowel, is called the Present Stem. The present stem of **portāre** is **portā-**. The present tense of the indicative mood is formed by uniting personal endings to the present stem. In the first person singular of the first conjugation the characteristic **ā** disappears. Before the endings **-t** and **-nt** it becomes short **a**.

47.

VOCABULARY

Britannia, -ae, Great Britain	mea, my, mine
Hibernia, -ae, Ireland	mihi, to me (<i>dat.</i>)
patria, -ae, native country	nōn, <i>adv.</i> , not
via, -ae, road, street	sunt, are, they are

¹In English, *you carry* may be either singular or plural. In Latin, the distinction between the singular and the plural of the verb in the second person is always indicated.

EXERCISES

48. 1. Nōn in Hiberniā habitō. 2. Britannia et Hibernia sunt insulae. 3. Britannia nōn patria mea est. 4. In viā cum nautā ambulāmus. 5. In insulā habitō. 6. Puella mihi rosam dat. 7. Tibi rosās dō. 8. Statuam pulchram laudātis. 9. Patriam meam amō et laudō. 10. Filia agricolae cum fēminā in viā ambulat.

49. 1. I praise the daughter of the farmer. 2. You (*singular*) are calling (call) the girl. 3. We do not live on the island. 4. My native country is beautiful. 5. You (*plural*) love the forest. 6. You love and praise your native country.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the personal endings of the verb, and the English pronoun for which each stands. (2) Translate *laudō* in three different ways. (3) Give the infinitives of the verbs in the vocabularies of Lessons I, III, and IV, with the meaning of each. (4) Divide the words **Britannia** and **Hibernia** into syllables and indicate the accent. (5) Form two English sentences, each of which contains a direct and an indirect object. (6) Tell what would be the case of these objects in Latin. (7) Form two English sentences containing predicate nouns and tell what would be the case of these nouns in Latin.



ROMAN WALL IN BRITAIN

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

50. (1) The subject of a finite¹ verb is in the nominative case.

(2) The predicate noun used with a finite form of the verb meaning *to be* is in the nominative case.

(3) The genitive case is used to name a person or thing referred to as possessing something.

(4) The indirect object is in the dative case.

(5) The dative is used in sentences or phrases containing adjectives of attitude or quality or relation to denote that toward which the attitude, quality, or relation is directed or in reference to which it is said to exist.

(6) The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

(7) The ablative case is used to express relations indicated in English by the prepositions *from*, *with*, or *in*.

(8) The vocative case is used to denote the person addressed.

TERMINATIONS (First Declension)

PERSONAL ENDINGS (Active Voice)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	-a	-ae	1.	-ō or -m ² (I)	-mus (we)
GEN.	-ae	-ārum	2.	-s (you)	-tis (you)
DAT.	-ae	-is	3.	-t (he, she, it)	-nt (they)
ACC.	-am	-ās			
ABL.	-ā	-is			

51. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

amble	habitation	patriotic
aquatic	Hibernian	portable
benign	insular	rose
Britain	laudable	statue
feminine	magnify	via (<i>in time-tables</i>)
gratify	nautical	vocation

¹ That is, any verb form except the infinitives and participles.

² The use of the personal ending -m will be shown later.

LESSON VI

**GENDER OF NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION, -UM NOUNS:
AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES****GENDER**

52. In Latin, gender is only in part a distinction based on sex. Many nouns referring to objects without life are either masculine or feminine. For example, *silva* and *rosa* are feminine.

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION

53. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, with the exception of a few words which regularly denote men. *Agricola* and *nauta* belong to this class and are masculine.

THE SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER NOUNS

54. Nouns ending in *-um* are of the Second Declension and are neuter in gender. They are declined as follows:

templum, N., *temple*

BASE, **templ-**

		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	templum,	<i>a temple</i>	-um
GEN.	templī,	<i>of a temple</i>	-ī
DAT.	templō,	<i>to or for a temple</i>	-ō
ACC.	templum,	<i>a temple</i>	-um
ABL.	templō,	<i>from, in, with a temple</i>	-ō
		PLURAL	
NOM.	templa,	<i>temples</i>	-a
GEN.	templōrum,	<i>of temples</i>	-ōrum
DAT.	templīs,	<i>to or for temples</i>	-īs
ACC.	templa,	<i>temples</i>	-a
ABL.	templīs,	<i>from, in, with temples</i>	-īs

a. The genitive ending **-ī** placed after a word in the vocabulary indicates that it is of the second declension.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

55. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender and number, as well as in case.

templum magnum, a great temple.

silva magna, a great forest.

56.

VOCABULARY

dōnum, -ī, N., gift, present

sed, conj., but

oppidum, -ī, N., town

stō, **stāre**, stand

periculum, -ī, N., danger

templum, -ī, N., temple

saxum, -ī, N., rock, stone

vitō, -āre, avoid

EXERCISES

57. 1. Agricola saxum magnum portat. 2. Templum pulchrum in insulā laudō. 3. In oppidō magnō habitāmus. 4. Dōnum grātum tibi nōn dant. 5. In insulā habitō, sed insula nōn mihi grāta est. 6. Agricola et nauta periculum nōn vitant. 7. Puellae in viā cum fēminā stant. 8. In viā oppidī cum filiā tuā ambulō.

58. 1. In the forest are large stones. 2. We give presents to the girls. 3. We are standing in the forest with the farmer. 4. Cornelia loves the woman, but she does not love the woman's daughter. 5. The woman gives a present to the sailor's daughter. 6. The sailor praises the beautiful town.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline the nouns **oppidum**, **saxum**, and **dōnum**. (2) Conjugate the verbs in the vocabulary of this lesson, in the present tense. (3) Decline together **saxum magnum**. (4) Decline together **silva magna**. (5) Point out the adjectives in 57 and give the reason for their forms. (6) Point out an indirect object in 58. (7) Give the case terminations of **templum**.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION, **-US** AND **-IR** NOUNS: VOCATIVE FORMS: APPPOSITION: POSITION OF ADVERBSNOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION IN **-US** AND **-IR**

59. In addition to the neuter nouns ending in **-um**, the second declension has masculine nouns ending in **-us**, **-er**, and **-ir**. The declension of those which end in **-us** and **-ir** is as follows:

	amicus , M., <i>friend</i> BASE, amic-		vir , M., <i>man</i> BASE, vir-	
	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
		TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS
NOM.	amicus, <i>a friend</i>	-us	vir, <i>man</i>	—
GEN.	amicī, <i>of a friend</i> , etc.	-ī	virī, <i>of a man</i>	-ī
DAT.	amicō	-ō	virō	-ō
ACC.	amicum	-um	virum	-um
ABL.	amicō	-ō	virō	-ō
VOC.	amice	-e		
	PLURAL		PLURAL	
NOM.	amicī	-ī	virī	-ī
GEN.	amicōrum	-ōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	amicīs	-īs	virīs	-īs
ACC.	amicōs	-ōs	virōs	-ōs
ABL.	amicīs	-īs	virīs	-īs

FORMS OF THE VOCATIVE

60. The vocative singular of nouns of the second declension in **-us** ends in **-e**. In all other Latin nouns the vocative singular is the same form as the nominative singular. The vocative plural of all nouns is the same as the nominative plural.

APPOSITION

61. A noun which serves to explain another noun referring to the same person or thing is said to be in Apposition with that noun.

Jones, *the captain* of the team, was hurt.

In this sentence, *captain* is in apposition with *Jones*.



THE APPIAN WAY IN THE TIME OF AUGUSTUS

THE CASE OF NOUNS IN APPPOSITION

62. A noun in apposition stands in the same case as the noun it explains.

Cornēlia, filia agricolae, benigna est, Cornelia, the farmer's daughter, is kind.

POSITION OF ADVERBS

63. An adverb usually stands before the word which it modifies.

64.

VOCABULARY

amicus, -i, m., friend
cūr, *adv.*, why
errō, -āre, wander
labōrō, -āre, work
numquam, *adv.*, never

nunc, *adv.*, now
servus, -i, m., slave
Sextus, -i, m., Sextus, *name*
of a man
vir, **virī**, m., man

EXERCISES

65. 1. Cūr dōna nōn tibi grāta sunt? 2. Sextus, servus, cum agricolā labōrat. 3. Amīcus agricolae in silvā errat. 4. Cornēlia, filiā nautae, nunc in oppidō est. 5. Amīcum Cornēliae numquam laudō. 6. Fīliam tuam, Sexte, laudō. 7. Servus in templō cum virō stat. 8. Virī mihi dōna dant. 9. Vir nauta est et in īnsulā habitat. 10. Agricola Sextum servum laudat.

66. 1. The slaves are wandering in the forest. 2. The man is standing in the street with the slave and the sailor. 3. Why is Sextus, the slave, working in the town? 4. Friend, you never praise your native country. 5. The man's native country is Ireland, but he lives in Great Britain.

 SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Form the vocative singular of **servus**, **Sextus**, **agricola**, and **fēmīna**. (2) Divide into syllables the words **amicōrum** and **agricolae** and indicate the accent of each. (3) Point out the words used in apposition in 65. (4) Name the cases which have the same forms in the plural of masculine nouns of the second declension. (5) Point out the appositives (nouns in apposition) and the predicate nouns in the following sentences, and name the case in which each would stand in Latin: (a) Maynard, the captain, was a hero. (b) We saw William, the boy who had been hurt. (c) I gave the papers to the lawyer, the man standing by the table. (d) This plan was the work of Franklin, the printer.

LESSON VIII

SECOND DECLENSION, **-ER** NOUNS: PRESENT INDICATIVE
OF **SUM**: THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION IN **-ER**

67. Second declension nouns in **-er** are declined thus:

	puer , M., <i>boy</i>			ager , M., <i>field</i>	
	BASE, puer-			BASE, agr-	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	puer	puerī	NOM.	ager	agri
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum	GEN.	agri	agrōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs	DAT.	agrō	agrīs
ACC.	puerum	puerōs	ACC.	agrū	agrōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs	ABL.	agrō	agrīs

68. The case terminations of the second declension are:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	-us, -er, -ir	-um	NOM.	-ī	-a
GEN.	-ī	-ī	GEN.	-ōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	-ō	-ō	DAT.	-īs	-īs
ACC.	-um	-um	ACC.	-ōs	-a
ABL.	-ō	-ō	ABL.	-īs	-īs

(Vocative singular, **-e** in nouns ending in **-us**)

69. The genitive printed after a word in the vocabulary will show whether or not the **e** of the nominative appears in the other cases.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **SUM**

70. The irregular verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
1.	sum, <i>I am</i>		1.	sumus, <i>we are</i>
2.	es, <i>you are</i>		2.	estis, <i>you are</i>
3.	est, <i>he, she, it is</i>		3.	sunt, <i>they are</i>

a. The present infinitive is **esse**, *to be*.

THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"

71. The English word *there* is often used as an expletive; that is, it serves merely to introduce the sentence and has no adverbial force (no idea of place). In this use it has no equivalent in Latin, and is to be supplied in translation when the sense requires; *est periculum* may be translated, *there is danger*.

72.

VOCABULARY

<i>accūsō, -āre</i> , accuse, censure	<i>puer, puerī</i> , m., boy
<i>ager, agrī</i> , m., field	<i>quod, conj.</i> , because
<i>liber, librī</i> , m., book	<i>tēlum, -ī</i> , n., weapon
<i>mūrus, -ī</i> , m., wall	<i>ubi, adv.</i> , where, when

EXERCISES

73. 1. *Puer in (on) mūrō ambulat.* 2. *Vir puerōs accūsāt quod in agrō sunt.* 3. *Cūr puerī et puellae librōs portant?* 4. *Amicus puerōrum et puellārum es.* 5. *Vir puellae bonae librum dat.* 6. *Periculum virōrum et puerōrum est magnum.* 7. *In silvā cum puerīs sumus.* 8. *Ubi liber puerī est?*

74. 1. The boys are walking on the island with the sailor. 2. There is danger in the forest. 3. The men are carrying weapons because there is danger. 4. The woman praises the roses and the books. 5. The boy is walking in the field and is carrying a stone. 6. Where does the sailor's friend live?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Distinguish between the use of *there* as an expletive and as an adverb in the following sentences: (a) I lived there two years. (b) I did not stop, because there was no one at home. (c) There was thought to be no hope. (2) Form two English sentences containing appositives and explain the case use of the appositives. (3) Point out the case endings of the nouns in sentences 3, 4, 6, 7, 73. (4) Give the accusative plural of *liber*, *puer*, and *tēlum*. (5) Give the vocative singular of *amicus* and *puer*.

LESSON IX

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES: IRREGULAR GENITIVE AND VOCATIVE FORMS**ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS**

75. There are many adjectives which have their masculine and neuter forms in the second declension and their feminine forms in the first declension. Those having the masculine ending in **-us** are declined as follows:

bonus, -a, -um, good

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō
VOC.	bone	bona	bonum
	PLURAL		
NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

The adjectives **benignus**, **grātus**, and **magnus**, the feminine forms of which have been given, are declined like **bonus**.

IRREGULAR GENITIVES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

76. Nouns ending in **-ium** or **-ius** regularly form the genitive singular by replacing **-ium** or **-ius** by **-ī**: **beneficium**, gen., **benefici**; **filius**, gen., **filī**. These shortened genitive forms are accented on the syllable before the last: **benefi'cī**. Adjectives are not thus contracted.

IRREGULAR VOCATIVE FORMS

77. Proper nouns ending in **-ius** and also the common noun **filius** regularly form the vocative singular in the same manner as the genitive singular; hence **fili** may be either genitive singular or vocative singular.

78.

VOCABULARY

beneficium, benefici , N., kindness, favor	multus, -a, -um , much; <i>in the plural</i> , many
filius, fili , M., son	oculus, -i , M., eye
lātus, -a, -um , wide, broad	porta, -ae , F., gate
longus, -a, -um , long	saepe , adv., often

a. The forms of the adjective **multus** precede the noun: **Multi viri**, *many men*. This is true in general of words which express an idea of quantity.

EXERCISES

79. 1. **Oculi** puellae magni sunt. 2. **Portae** oppidi sunt latae. 3. **Amicus** benignus saepe dona dat. 4. **Cūr** nōn patriam tuam amās? 5. **Agricola** in agrō magnō labōrat. 6. **Viae** oppidi longae et latae sunt. 7. **Multi viri** in Britannia habitant. 8. **Pueri** boni estis et labōrātis. 9. **Beneficia** amicōrum sunt grata.

80. 1. Why do you walk in the street? 2. The island is long but it is not wide. 3. The girl is carrying many roses. 4. The sons of the sailor live in Ireland. 5. The wall of the town is not long. 6. The farmer often praises the good slaves.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **vir benignus**. (2) Decline together **ager lātus**. (3) Give the genitive singular and the accusative plural of the phrase **auxilium magnum**. (4) Decline together **filius bonus**. (5) Give the nominative plural of **longus** in the three genders. (6) Decline together the words meaning *many books*.

LESSON X

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (Continued):
POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVESADJECTIVES IN *-er* OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

81. Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have the masculine singular nominative ending in *-er*. Of these, some are declined by adding the case endings to the nominative singular of the masculine. In others the *e* before *r* appears only in the nominative and vocative singular of the masculine.

miser, -a, -um, unhappy

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>miser</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
GEN.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserī</i>
DAT.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserō</i>
ACC.	<i>miserum</i>	<i>miseram</i>	<i>miserum</i>
ABL.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserō</i>
	PLURAL		
NOM.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>misera</i>
GEN.	<i>miserōrum</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
ACC.	<i>miserōs</i>	<i>miserās</i>	<i>misera</i>
ABL.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful

	SINGULAR		
NOM.	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
GEN.	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>
DAT.	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
ACC.	<i>pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchram</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
ABL.	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrā</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
DAT.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
ABL.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

82. The adjective does not always have the same ending as the noun with which it agrees.

The use of adjectives with masculine nouns of the first declension is as follows:

nauta bonus, the good sailor.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

NOM.	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
GEN.	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
DAT.	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
ACC.	nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
ABL.	nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs
VOC.	nauta bone	nautae bonī

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

83. The possessive words **meus**, *my* or *mine*, **tuus**, *your* (referring to one person), **noster**, *our*, and **vester**, *your* (referring to more than one person) are adjectives, and are declined throughout. They take their gender, number, and case from the thing possessed and not from the persons to whom they refer as possessors.

liber meus, my book.

rosa mea, my rose.

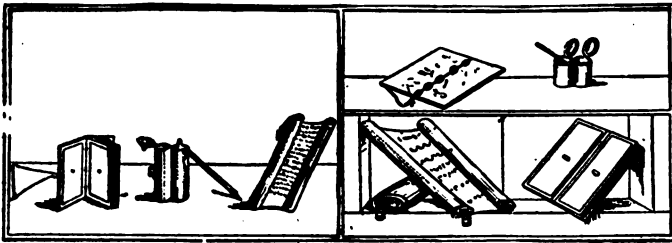
dōnum meum, my gift.

- a. The vocative of **meus** in the masculine singular is **mī**. **Tuus** has no vocative.

84.

VOCABULARY

auxilium, auxili , N., aid, help.	miser, misera, miserum , un-
assistance	happy, unfortunate
equus, -i , M., horse	noster, nostra, nostrum , our,
impiger, impigra, impigrum ,	ours
energetic, industrious	piger, pigra, pigrum , lazy
liber, libera, liberum , free	postulō, -āre , demand



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

EXERCISES

85. 1. Virī auxilium nostrum postulant quod periculum magnum est. 2. Amīcus noster equum pulchrum tuum laudat. 3. Fēmina misera est quod puerī pigri sunt. 4. Agricola impiger cum servō labōrat. 5. Servus miser est quod nōn liber est. 6. Puer bonus es et amīcōs tuōs amās. 7. Amīcī virōrum benignī sunt. 8. Aquam nōn portātis quod pigri estis.

86. 1. A good slave is not lazy. 2. Your daughter loves beautiful horses. 3. The kind farmer praises the boy. 4. We often praise the good sailor. 5. We are unhappy because our friends are in danger.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **nauta miser**. (2) Give the genitive singular and the vocative singular of the phrase meaning *my son*. (3) Decline together **servus piger**. (4) Decline **noster** in full. (5) Give all the endings of the second declension in the nominative singular.

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

87.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

ager, agrī, M.	saxum, -ī, N.	dō, dare ¹
agricola, -ae, M.	servus, -ī, M.	errō, -āre
amicitia, -ae, F.	silva, -ae, F.	habitō, -āre
amicus, -ī, M.	tēlum, -ī, N.	labōrō, -āre
aqua, -ae, F.	templum, -ī, N.	portō, -āre
auxilium, -ī, N.	via, -ae, F.	postulō, -āre
beneficium, -ī, N.	vir, virī, M.	stō, stāre
dōnum, -ī, N.	benignus, -a, -um	sum, esse
equus, -ī, M.	bonus, -a, -um	vītō, -āre
fēmina, -ae, F.	grātus, -a, -um	vocō, -āre
filia, -ae, F.	lātus, -a, -um	cūr
filius, -ī, M.	liber, libera, liberum	nōn
liber, librī, M.	magnus, -a, -um	numquam
mūrus, -ī, M.	meus, mea, meum	nunc
nauta, -ae, M.	miser, misera, miserum	saepe
oculus, -ī, M.	multus, -a, -um	cum
oppidum, -ī, N.	noster, nostra, nostrum	ē, ex
patria, -ae, F.	piger, pigra, pigrum	in
periculum, -ī, N.	puleher, -chra, -chrum	et
porta, -ae, F.	tuus, tua, tuum	quod
puella, -ae, F.	accūsō, -āre	sed
puer, puerī, M.	amō, -āre	ubi

88.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

accusation	error	mural
agriculture	filial	oculist
amicable	laborious	peril
auxiliary	liberty	puerile
beneficial	library	servant
donation	miserable	temple
equine	multiply	station

¹ The verb *dō* is irregular in that the *a* is short in the infinitive (45, *a*) and in almost all the other forms except the second person singular, *dās*.



ROMAN MATRONS OFFERING GIFTS

LESSON XI

DEMONSTRATIVES: DECLENSION OF *HIC*: POSITION OF DEMONSTRATIVES**DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS**

89. The demonstratives in Latin, like their most general English equivalents, *this* and *that*, are used to point out objects without describing them.

DECLENSION OF *HIC*

90. The forms of the demonstrative *hic*, *this*, pointing out an object near at hand, are as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

91. The demonstratives may be used as adjectives or as pronouns. As adjectives they agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns to which they belong. As pronouns they agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer, but their case is determined by their use in the clauses in which they stand.

POSITION OF DEMONSTRATIVES

92. Demonstrative adjectives, like words which express quantity (78, *a*), unless especially emphasized, precede the nouns to which they belong: *hic vir*, *this man*. This is also true of words which denote number.

93.

VOCABULARY

bellum , -ī, N., war	locus , -ī, M. (<i>usually neuter in the plural</i>), place
dēmōnstrō , -āre, show, point out	vester , -tra, -trum, your, of more than one
hic , haec , hoc , this, <i>pl.</i> these	vulnerō , -āre, wound
lēgātus , -ī, M., lieutenant, envoy	

EXERCISES

94. 1. Hī virī bonī bellum nōn laudant. 2. Lēgātus hoc periculum vītat. 3. Hunc locum amō ubi amīcī vestrī habitant. 4. Hae puellae numquam magna dōna postulant. 5. Huic agricolae bellum nōn grātum est. 6. Cūr amīcum tuum vulnerās? 7. Filia huius virī impigrī nōn impigra est. 8. Hanc puellam laudāmus quod labōrat. 9. Amīcī huius fēminae ex hōc oppidō properant. 10. Hic nauta benignus periculum dēmōnstrat.

95. 1. We are hastening from the forest with our friends. 2. This girl loves the farmer's daughter. 3. This gift is not pleasing to you. 4. The slave wounds the sailor. 5. There is a large forest on this island. 6. This man points out the forest. 7. Boys, your friends are in great danger.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **hic ager**. (2) Decline together **haec silva**. (3) Decline together the words meaning *this sailor*. (4) In the following sentences state which occurrences of *your* will be translated by a form of **tuus**, and which by a form of **vester**: (a) Soldiers, your courage has saved us. (b) Mary, where are your books? (c) Your cap has fallen on the ground. (d) Gentlemen, we need your help. (e) Your hand is small.

LESSON XII

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE:
ABLATIVE OF AGENT

THE PASSIVE VOICE

96. The passive voice represents the subject of the clause as acted upon.

Puer laudātur, the boy is praised.

97. The passive forms of **portō** in the present tense, indicative mood, are as follows:

SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
portor, <i>I am carried</i>	-r (-or)
portāris or portāre, <i>you are carried</i>	-ris (-re)
portātur, <i>he, she, it is carried</i>	-tur
PLURAL	
portāmur, <i>we are carried</i>	-mur
portāmini, <i>you are carried</i>	-mini
portantur, <i>they are carried</i>	-ntur

a. The passive present forms may also be translated, *I am being carried, you are being carried, etc.*

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

98. With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which indicates the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative case, governed by the preposition **ā** or **ab**. This is called the Ablative of Agent.

Liber ā puerō portātur, the book is carried by the boy.

a. There are three points to be noted with regard to the ablative of agent: (1) It always has a preposition. (2) It is used only with a passive verb. (3) It regularly denotes a *person*.

99.

VOCABULARY

ā, ab, ¹ <i>prep. with abl.</i> , from, by	impigrē, <i>adv.</i> , industriously,
carrus, -ī, m. , cart	energetically
cōnsilium, -ī, n. , plan, counsel, advice	iuuō, -āre, help, assist
expectō, -āre, wait for, expect	probō, -āre, approve, approve of

EXERCISES

100. 1. Bellum longum ab hīs virīs nōn expectātur. 2. Hoc cōnsilium ā multīs puerīs probātur. 3. Laudāris quod impigrē labōrās. 4. Ab amicīs tuīs iuvāmur et laudāmur. 5. Multa tēla ab hīs puerīs portantur. 6. Haec puella laudātur quod impigrē labōrat. 7. Perīculum ā lēgātō numquam vitātur. 8. Carrus agricolae in viā est. 9. Hic nauta auxilium postulat quod in perīculō est. 10. Saxa magna ab hōc agricolā portantur.

101. 1. The slave is helped by this kind man. 2. Gifts are expected by many boys. 3. This plan is praised because it is good. 4. The good farmer praises these horses. 5. This sailor now works energetically. 6. This boy's cart is not large. 7. We approve of your plan and we are your friends.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Conjugate the verbs of the vocabulary in the present passive. (2) Point out the examples of the ablative of agent in the sentences of 100. (3) Point out the personal endings of the verbs in 100. (4) Decline together *hoc cōnsilium*. (5) Distinguish between the active and the passive voice in the following phrases: (a) He is praised, he is praising, he is being praised. (b) He is working, he approves, he is called.

¹ Before vowels or *h*, *ab* is used, before most consonants, *ā*.

LESSON XIII

ILLE AND IPSE: ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENTDECLENSION OF *ILLE*

102. The demonstrative *ille*, *that*, is used to refer to an object which is somewhat remote from the speaker in time, place, or thought. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
GEN. <i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illorum</i>	<i>illarum</i>	<i>illorum</i>
DAT. <i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
ACC. <i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illos</i>	<i>illas</i>	<i>illa</i>
ABL. <i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

DECLENSION OF *IPSE*

103. The intensive pronoun *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *myself*, *yourself*, is used to emphasize a noun or another pronoun, with which it agrees. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
GEN. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>	<i>ipsarum</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>
DAT. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
ACC. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
ABL. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

104. The use of the ablative with *cum* to name the person with whom one is associated in doing an act is called the Ablative of Accompaniment.

Cum amīcō ambulō, *I walk with a friend.*

105.

VOCABULARY

convocō, -āre , call together	numerus, -ī, m. , number
ille, illa, illud , that (<i>pl.</i> those); as <i>pron.</i> , he, she, it (<i>pl.</i> they)	parvus, -a, -um , small
ipse, ipsa, ipsum , himself, her- self, <i>etc.</i> ; <i>pl.</i> themselves, <i>etc.</i>	semper, adv. , always
	vix, adv. , scarcely, with diffi- culty

EXERCISES

106. 1. Ille puer piger est, hic vir impiger est. 2. Illud saxum ā virō ipsō vix portātur. 3. Servus ipse impigrē labōrat. 4. Periculum illī virō semper grātum est. 5. Puer magnum numerum amīcōrum convocat. 6. Illa silva magna in insulā est. 7. In illō oppidō cum amīcīs habitāmus. 8. Oppidum ipsum nōn grātum est. 9. Illa puella parva librōs amat. 10. Filia illīus fēminae benigna est.

107. 1. The boy himself always works. 2. The small temple is praised by my friend. 3. Those girls are not always lazy. 4. We avoid the danger with difficulty. 5. The man himself calls together a large number of small boys. 6. The walls of those towns are large. 7. That farmer always loves good horses. 8. The small boy is helped by the energetic farmer.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Write two Latin sentences containing ablatives of accompaniment, using the verbs **labōrō** and **stō**. (2) Point out an ablative of accompaniment and an ablative of agent in the sentences of 106. (3) Decline together **illa statua**. (4) Decline together the words meaning *that farmer*. (5) Give the accusative singular and plural of **hic** in all genders.

LESSON XIV

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS: PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE
SECOND CONJUGATION: ABLATIVE OF PLACE

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

108. There are four conjugations of verbs in Latin. They are distinguished by the final vowel of the present stem. The termination of the present active infinitive shows to which conjugation a verb belongs.

	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Termination</i>	<i>Characteristic Vowel</i>
I.	portāre	-āre	ā
II.	monēre	-ēre	ē
III.	dūcere	-ere	e
IV.	audire	-ire	i

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

109. The characteristic vowel of the second conjugation, **ē**, appears in all the forms of the present tense. It becomes short before another vowel and before the personal endings **-t**, **-nt**, and **-ntur**. (The same change of quantity takes place in the other conjugations when a long vowel is followed by another vowel or by the endings given above.)

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
moneō, <i>I warn, am warning, etc.</i>	moneor, <i>I am warned</i>
monēs, <i>you warn, etc.</i>	monēris, -re, <i>you are warned</i>
monet, <i>he, she, it warns, etc.</i>	monētur, <i>he, she, it is warned</i>
PLURAL	PLURAL
monēmus, <i>we warn</i>	monēmur, <i>we are warned</i>
monētis, <i>you warn</i>	monēmini, <i>you are warned</i>
monent, <i>they warn</i>	monentur, <i>they are warned</i>

a. The personal endings are the same as in the first conjugation.

THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE

110. The use of the ablative with *in* to refer to the place where something is or is done is called the Ablative of Place or the Locative Ablative.

111.

VOCABULARY

domicilium , -ī, N., home, dwelling place, residence	moneō , -ēre, warn, advise, remind
habeō , -ēre, have	proelium , -ī, N., battle
iniūria , -ae, F., injury	timeō , -ēre, fear
Italia , -ae, F., Italy	videō , -ēre, see

EXERCISES

112. 1. Hunc puerum pigrum monēmus. 2. Illum puerum impigrum semper laudāmus. 3. Iniūriae tuae multae sunt. 4. Ille puer parvus equum magnum timet. 5. Periculum ab illō virō nōn timētur. 6. Puella saepe in silvā ambulat et ab agricolā vidētur. 7. Hic vir in proeliō nōn timet. 8. Cūr hoc periculum magnum nōn vidēs? 9. Italia ā multis amātur et laudātur. 10. Agricola bonus semper equōs bonōs habet. 11. Domicilium meum in illā insulā est.

113. 1. We do not live in Italy. 2. The sailors see the small island. 3. The boys are walking with the sailor and do not fear danger. 4. The man is feared because he has a weapon. 5. We are in danger and we are warned by our friends. 6. They see the town where you live. 7. My friend has a residence in this town.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the reason for the case of each noun in sentences 5, 6, and 7, of 113. (2) Indicate the personal endings of the verbs in sentences 8, 9, and 10, 112. (3) Conjugate **timeō** and **videō** in the present indicative, active and passive. (4) Give the genitive plural and the accusative plural of **iniūria** and **proellum**. (5) Give the genitive singular of the words meaning *this kindness*.



ROMAN FESTIVAL PROCESSION

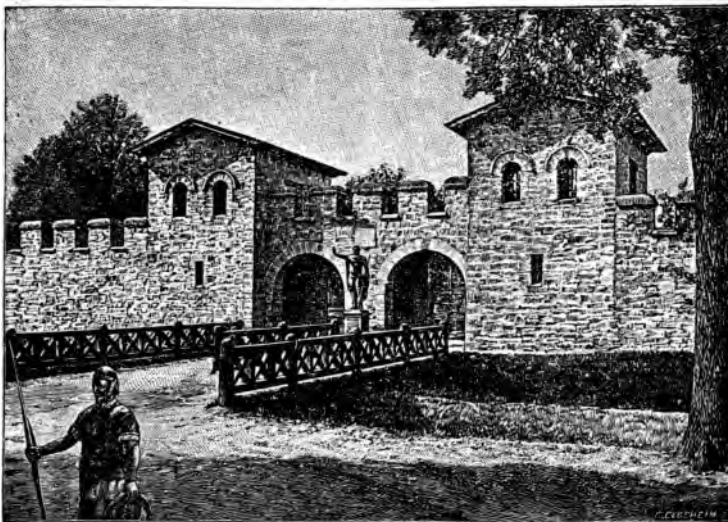
LESSON XV

PAST (IMPERFECT) INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: *HIC* AND *ILLE* AS CORRELATIVES**THE PAST (IMPERFECT)¹ INDICATIVE ACTIVE**

114. The past tense of the indicative mood represents an act as going on or a situation as existing at a past time.

Vocābam, I was calling.

It is sometimes translated by the simple form of the past tense, *I called*.



ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP

¹ While the name "past descriptive," indicates the use of this tense very satisfactorily, it has seemed best to employ merely the name "past" in the paradigms and exercises of this book. Teachers who prefer to use the more complete name, or to retain the older name, "Imperfect," may easily indicate the necessary change by a general direction to the class.

115. The past tense is formed on the present stem. It has the tense sign **bā** connecting the stem and the personal endings. In the active the vowel **ā** becomes short before the endings **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**.

The endings are the same as in the present tense, except that the first person singular ends in **-m**. **Portō** and **moneō** are conjugated in the past indicative active as follows:

SINGULAR

portābam, I was carrying or I carried
portābās, you were carrying, you carried
portābat, he, she, it was carrying, he carried, etc.

PLURAL

portābāmus, we were carrying, we carried
portābātis, you were carrying, you carried
portābant, they were carrying, they carried

SINGULAR

monēbam, I was warning or I warned
monēbās, you were warning, you warned
monēbat, he, she, it was warning, etc.

PLURAL

monēbāmus, we were warning, etc.
monēbātis, you were warning, etc.
monēbant, they were warning, etc.

CORRELATIVE USE OF **HIC** AND **ILLE**

116. The forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used in the same sentence to refer to contrasted persons or things. In this use **ille** is regularly translated *the former* and **hic** *the latter*.

Puer et puella labōrant. Ille impiger, haec pigra est.

The boy and the girl are working. The former is industrious, the latter is lazy.

117.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, -āre , approach	Rōmānus, -ī, m. , a Roman
castra, -ōrum, n., pl. , camp	rūrsus, adv. , again
maneō, -ēre , remain	sine, prep. with abl. , without
moveō, -ēre , move	tum, adv. , then, at that time

EXERCISES

118. Puer ipse saxum portābat. 2. Tum Rōmānī castra in silvā habēbant. 3. Statuam ex illō locō rūrsus movēbant. 4. Lēgātum et filium agricolae videō. Hic in agrō labōrat, ille in viā stat. 5. Hic vir nunc auxilium postulat quod sine amīcō est. 6. In oppidō manēbāmus quod amīcī nostrī appropinquābant.

119. 1. The Romans themselves loved Italy. 2. We feared injury because we did not have many friends. 3. The stones in the street are large and we walk with difficulty. 4. Then the sailor was living on the large island, now he is living in the town. 5. Sextus was calling together the boys again.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **appropinquō** and **moveō** in the past indicative active. (2) Decline the words which mean *a large camp*. (3) Indicate the tense signs and the personal endings of the verbs of sentences 1, 2, 3, and 6, 118. (4) Decline together **hic Rōmānus**. (5) Decline together **puer ipse**. (6) Give the third person singular in the present and the past indicative active of the verbs in the vocabularies of Lessons XIV and XV.

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

120. (1) The second declension of nouns.
 (2) Gender in the first and second declensions.
 (3) Adjectives of the first and second declensions.
 (4) The agreement of adjectives.
 (5) The declension of **hic** and **ille**.
 (6) The position of demonstratives.
 (7) Possessive adjectives.
 (8) The first conjugation, present indicative passive, past indicative active.
 (9) The second conjugation, present indicative, active and passive, past indicative active.
 (10) Apposition.
 (11) The ablative of agent.
 (12) The ablative of accompaniment.
 (13) Terminations of the second declension.
 (14) Terminations of adjectives, first and second declensions:

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	-us, -er	-a	-um		-ī	-ae	-a
GEN.	-ī	-ae	-ī		-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
DAT.	-ō	-ae	-ō		-īs	-īs	-īs
ACC.	-um	-am	-um		-ōs	-ās	-a
ABL.	-ō	-ā	-ō		-īs	-īs	-īs

Vocative singular **-e** in **-us** masculine forms.

121. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

admonition	expectation	numeral
belligerent	injury	numerous
car	Italian	probable
convocation	legation	Roman
demonstration	location	timid
domicile	move	vulnerable

LESSON XVI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*. DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBSTHE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

122. In addition to the demonstratives **hic** and **ille**, there is a third demonstrative, **is**, translated *this* or *that*, as the sense of the sentence in which it stands may require. It does not emphasize the idea that the thing to which it refers is near, as does **hic**, or that it is remote, as does **ille**. Usually it refers to something which has been recently mentioned. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

Is ager lātus est, *this (or that) field is broad.*

Amicī eius puerī multi sunt, *the friends of this (or that) boy are many.*

In eā insulā magnum oppidum est, *on this (or that) island there is a large town.*

IS AS A PRONOUN

123. The word **is** frequently serves as a personal pronoun of the third person, and is translated by a form of *he, she, it*, or (in the plural) *they*, as the meaning of the sentence requires.

Eum vidēbam, *I saw him.*

Amicus eius benignus est, *his (or her) friend is kind.*

Ei multa dōna dās, *you give him (or her) many gifts.*

Amicitiam eōrum dēsiderāmus, *we desire their friendship, etc.*

a. The genitives **eius** and **eōrum** (as pronouns) may either precede or follow the nouns on which they depend.

THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS¹

124. Some verbs, the meanings of which suggest the idea of *quality, attitude, or relation*, are followed by the dative, although the equivalent English verbs take a direct object.

Equus tibi placet, *the horse pleases you.*

125. The most important verbs of this class which govern the dative are those meaning to *favor, please, trust, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare, and persuade.*



VICTIMS FOR A ROMAN SACRIFICE

126.

VOCABULARY

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely

Gallia, **-ae**, *F.*, Gaul (*a name formerly given France, including part of the country on the north and northeast*)

Gallus, **-i**, *M.*, a Gaul (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*)

is, ea, id, *this, that; as pron.*, he, she, it

ōlim, *adv.*, formerly

persuādeō, **-ēre**, *with dative*, persuade

placeō, **-ēre**, *with dative*, please

pugnō, **-āre**, *fight*

¹ In the case of some of these verbs, the original meaning which made natural the use of the dative is not readily seen in translation. For example, **persuādeō**, *persuade*, meant *make attractive (to)*.

EXERCISES

127. 1. Domicilium eius in Galliā est. 2. Fīlia eius viri misera est. 3. Gallī castra movēbant quod Rōmānī appropinquābant. 4. Iniūriae eōrum magnae sunt. 5. Cūr eī puellae librōs dās? 6. Ōlim hī puerī labōrābant et eōs laudābāmus. 7. Hae puellae pigrae sunt sed librī eīs placent. 8. Gallī et Rōmānī in eō proeliō fortiter pugnābant. 9. Amīcō meō nōn persuādēs.

128. 1. Their friends remained in town. 2. The girl is kind and her friends are many. 3. We ourselves often praise her. 4. The man persuaded this boy with difficulty. 5. Your plan does not please these men. 6. Why does not my plan please them?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out those forms of **is** which are used as pronouns and those which are used as adjectives in the sentences of 127. (2) Explain the case of **eīs** in sentence 7 and of **amīcō** in sentence 9, 127. (3) Decline **is liber**. (4) Conjugate **pugnō** and **persuādeō** in the past indicative active. (5) Give the genitive singular of the three demonstratives, **hic**, **ille**, and **is**.

LESSON XVII

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: ABLATIVE OF MEANS

THE PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE

129. The past indicative passive of the first and second conjugations is formed as follows:

SINGULAR	SINGULAR
portābar, <i>I was being carried</i> or <i>I was carried</i>	monēbar
portābāris, -re, <i>you were being carried</i> , etc.	monēbāris, -re
portābātur, <i>he was being carried</i> , etc.	monēbātur
PLURAL	PLURAL
portābāmur, <i>we were being carried</i> , etc.	monēbāmur
portābāminī, <i>you were being carried</i> , etc.	monēbāminī
portābantur, <i>they were being carried</i> , etc.	monēbantur

a. The only difference between the active and the passive forms of this tense is in the personal endings. The *ā* of the tense sign becomes short before the endings -r and -ntur.

THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

130. The means or instrument with which an act is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This is called the Ablative of Means.

Galli gladiis pugnant, *the Gauls fight with swords.*

Puer saxō vulnerātur, *the boy is wounded by the stone.*

131. In translating the ablative of means into English, a preposition, *by* or *with*, is used. This use of the case is to be distinguished from the ablative of agent, which refers to the person by whom the act is done, and which always takes *ā* or *ab*, and from the ablative of accompaniment, which regularly takes *cum*.

132.

VOCABULARY

augeō, -ēre, increase

gladius, -ī, M., sword

longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance

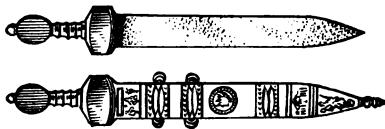
necō, -āre, kill

poena, -ae, F., punishment

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow

studeō, -ēre, *with dat.*, desire

terreō, -ēre, frighten, terrify



ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

EXERCISES

133. 1. Puer equum sagittā vulnerat. 2. Eī virī gladiīs pugnant. 3. Poena ab eīs nōn timēbātur. 4. Perīculum augēbātur et ab amīcīs nōn iuvābāmur. 5. Gallī multōs Rōmānōs sagittīs necābant. 6. Puellae parvae terrēbantur et ex silvā properābant. 7. Castra ā lēgātō movēbantur quod is perīculum vidēbat. 8. Tum longē ab oppidō domicilium habēbāmus. 9. Hī puerī dōnīs multīs student.

134. 1. You (*plur.*) were often warned by him, but you did not fear. 2. Formerly Italy was praised by many. 3. The boys were fighting with stones. 4. We were helping the boys by our advice. 5. The Gauls were often wounded in battle by arrows. 6. Your plan was approved, but your friends did not give aid. 7. We do not desire war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the examples of the ablative of means and also of the ablative of agent in 133. (2) Explain the case of **dōnīs** in sentence 9, 133. (3) In the following sentences tell what use of the ablative would be employed to translate the prepositional phrases: (a) He walked with his father. (b) He struck the horse with a stick. (4) Give the third person singular in the present indicative passive and past indicative passive of **necō** and **terreō**.

LESSON XVIII

FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE FUTURE TENSE

135. The future tense is formed on the present stem. In the first and second conjugations a tense sign, **bi**, is added to this stem. This tense sign becomes **bu** in the third person plural active and passive, and **be** in the second person singular passive. The **i** of the tense sign disappears before the endings **-ō** and **-or** in the first person singular.

The conjugation of **moneō** and **portō** in the future indicative, active and passive, is as follows:

ACTIVE	
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
portābō, <i>I shall carry</i>	monēbō, <i>I shall warn</i>
portābis, <i>you will carry</i>	monēbis, <i>you will warn</i>
portābit, <i>he will carry</i>	monēbit, <i>he will warn</i>
PLURAL	PLURAL
portābimus, <i>we shall carry</i>	monēbimus, <i>we shall warn</i>
portābitis, <i>you will carry</i>	monēbitis, <i>you will warn</i>
portābunt, <i>they will carry</i>	monēbunt, <i>they will warn</i>
PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
portābor, <i>I shall be carried</i>	monēbor, <i>I shall be warned</i>
portāberis, -re	monēberis, -re
portābitur	monēbitur
PLURAL	PLURAL
portābimur	monēbimur
portābiminī	monēbiminī
portābuntur	monēbuntur

136.

VOCABULARY

arma , -ōrum, N., <i>pl.</i> , arms,	oppugnō , -āre, attack
weapons	scūtum , -ī, N., shield
compleō , -ēre, fill, fill up	superō , -āre, defeat, over-
faveō , -ēre, <i>with dative</i> , favor	come
fossa , -ae, F., ditch	tamen , <i>adv.</i> , nevertheless, still

EXERCISES

ROMAN
SHIELD

137. 1. Amīcī meī monēbuntur quod periculum magnum est. 2. Hī servī arma portābunt sed nōn ipsī pugnābunt. 3. Gallī fortiter pugnant sed superābuntur. 4. Agricola fossam saxīs cōmplēbit. 5. Illud oppidum ā Rōmānīs oppugnābitur. 6. In eō proeliō fortiter pugnābant sed tamen superābantur. 7. In oppidō multōs amīcōs vidēbimus. 8. Impigrē labōrās et laudāberis. 9. Amīcīs nostrīs semper favēmus.

138. 1. The slaves will not fight with weapons. 2. The boy will carry the shield and the sword. 3. We shall see the danger, but we shall not fear. 4. You (*sing.*) will often be praised by your friend. 5. The men will fight bravely, but nevertheless they will be defeated. 6. We shall not be frightened by the Gauls. 7. This man favored the Romans.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the tense signs and the personal endings in the verbs of sentences 4, 5, and 7, 137. (2) Explain the case of **amīcīs**, 9, 137. (3) Conjugate **compleō** and **superō** in the future indicative active and passive. (4) Give the third person plural active of **habeō** in the present, past, and future indicative.

ELEMENTARY LATIN

LESSON XIX

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON: OMISSION POSSESSIVES: PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

139. The possessive adjective of the third person, **suus**, **sua**, **suum**, is reflexive; that is, it indicates that the subject of the sentence or clause is the possessor.

Puer amicōs suōs laudat, *the boy praises his (his own) friends.*

Pueri amicōs suōs laudant, *the boys praise their (their own) friends.*

Fēmina filiam suam monet, *the woman warns her daughter.*

a. The gender and number of the subject of the sentence or clause in which a form of **suus** stands determine whether the meaning is *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their*. For the sake of emphasis or clearness, **suus** may sometimes be translated *his own*, *her own*, *its own*, or *their own*.

b. If the possessor is some other person than the subject, *his*, *her*, or *its* is regularly expressed by **eius**, the genitive singular of **is**, and *their* by **eōrum** or **eārum**, the genitive plural of **is**.

Amicōs eius laudant, *they praise his friends.*

Amicōs eōrum laudat, *he praises their friends.*

The genitive forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used instead of those of **is**, to denote possession.

THE OMISSION OF POSSESSIVES

140. The possessives are often omitted in Latin if they are not emphatic or if they are not needed for the sake of

clearness. They are to be supplied in translation from Latin into English whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina filiam amat, *the woman loves her daughter.*

THE PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM

141. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the past and future indicative:

PAST	FUTURE
SINGULAR	
eram, <i>I was</i>	erō, <i>I shall be</i>
erās, <i>you were</i>	eris, <i>you will be</i>
erat, <i>he, she, it was</i>	erit, <i>he, she, it will be</i>
PLURAL	
erāmus, <i>we were</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be</i>
erātis, <i>you were</i>	eritis, <i>you will be</i>
erant, <i>they were</i>	erunt, <i>they will be</i>

142.

VOCABULARY

inimicus , -ī, M., enemy	potentia , -ae, F., power
irātus , -a, -um, angry, angry at (<i>with dative</i>)	prīmō , <i>adv.</i> , at first
occupō , -āre, seize	Rōmānus , -a, -um, Roman
populus , -ī, M., people	suus , sua, suum, his, her, its, their; his own, her own, etc.

EXERCISES

143. 1. Prīmō illi pueri inimicī erant. 2. Hic vir in domiciliō suō tum erat. 3. Illud oppidum ā Gallis occupābitur. 4. Semper amīcī tuī erimus. 5. Cornēlia benigna est et amīcī eius multī sunt. 6. Patriam semper amābimus et laudābimus. 7. Hoc cōnsilium tuum bonum est. 8. Cūr hic vir filiō suō irātus erat? 9. Populus Rōmānus potentiam magnam habēbat. 10. Agricola equōs suōs laudat.

144. 1. The number of Gauls in the town was large. 2. These gifts will be pleasing to the small boys. 3. At first the power of the Roman people was small. 4. We shall not be angry at your friend. 5. The camp was being seized by the Gauls. 6. Your daughter has her own book. 7. The woman loves her son, but she praises your daughter.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline **suus** in full. (2) Give the possessive adjectives of the first and second persons. (3) Give the Latin equivalent for each of the possessives in the following sentences: (a) I was walking with the boy and his brother. (b) The general constructed his camp not far from the camp of the enemy. (c) I do not desire their help. (d) They cannot defend their own homes. (4) Give the third person singular and plural of **sum** in the present, past, and future indicative.



GATE IN THE WALL OF MODERN ROME

LESSON XX

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: MEANINGS OF PERFECT AND PAST

THE PERFECT TENSE, ACTIVE VOICE

145. The perfect tense represents an act as completed at the time of speaking or writing, or refers to a past act without giving any indication of its continuance. It is translated by the English present perfect or by the English past tense, as the sense requires.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *PORTO*, *MONEO*, AND *SUM*

146. The verbs **portō**, **moneō**, and **sum** are conjugated in the perfect indicative active as follows:

SINGULAR

portāvī, *I have carried or I carried*

portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*

portāvistī, *you have carried, etc.*

portāvit, *he has carried, etc.*

PLURAL

portāvimus, *we have carried, etc.*

portāvistis, *you have carried, etc.*

portāverunt or **portāvēre**, *they have carried, etc.*

monuī, *I have warned*

fui, *I have been*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

monuī

monuimus

monuistī

monuistis

monuit

monuērunt, -ēre

SINGULAR

PLURAL

fui

fuimus

fuistī

fuistis

fuit

fuērunt, -ēre

ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT

147. The personal endings which are used in forming the perfect indicative active are different from those used in the other tenses. They are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt or -ēre

a. The use of the perfect endings is the same in all verbs, regular or irregular.

148. The perfect stem to which these endings are added is found by dropping the final ī of the first person singular. Thus, the perfect stem of **portō** is **portāv-**, of **moneō** is **monu-**, of **sum** is **fu-**.

149. The first person singular of the perfect indicative of all first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **iuvō**, **dō**, and **stō**, ends in **-āvī**, like the perfect of **portō**: **amāvī**, **postulāvī**, **explōrāvī**, etc. The perfect of **dō** is **dedī**, stem **ded-**; of **iuvō** is **iūvī**, stem **iūv-**; of **stō** is **stetī**, stem **stet-**.

150. Many (but not all) verbs of the second conjugation have perfects ending in **-uī**, like the perfect of **moneō**: **habuī**, **terruī**, etc.

MEANINGS OF THE PAST AND THE PERFECT

151. The perfect is distinguished from the past in meaning by the fact that the past represents a past act in progress or a situation in the past, while the perfect either represents an act as past, with no reference to its continuance, or brings into prominence the fact of its completion at the time of speaking or writing.

PAST. **laudābam**, *I was praising*

PERF. **laudāvī**, *I praised or I have praised*

152.

VOCABULARY

altus , -a, -um, high, tall, deep	expugnō , -āre, -āvi, take by
cēlō , -āre, -āvi, conceal	storm, capture
epistula , -ae, f., letter	hodiē , <i>adv.</i> , today
explōrō , -āre, -āvi, explore	invitō , -āre, -āvi, invite

EXERCISES

153. 1. Numquam filium tuum monuisti. 2. Nauta saepe in eō oppidō fuit. 3. Hoc saxum magnum portāvi. 4. Rōmānī ea castra expugnāvērunt. 5. Amīcōs suōs saepe invitāvērunt. 6. Hunc locum hodiē explōrāvī. 7. Multās sagittās et multōs gladiōs in eō oppidō cēlāvērunt. 8. Mūrus huius oppidī altus est. 9. Servus multās epistulās portāvit. 10. Agricola filiō suō equum dedit.

154. 1. We have captured many towns of the Gauls. 2. My friends have not explored this island. 3. I have often invited these men. 4. This boy has always been industrious. 5. Why have you not warned these men? 6. I am expecting a long letter today. 7. I have given the boy a small gift.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the personal endings of the verbs in the sentences of **153.** (2) Conjugate **terreō** and **dō** in the perfect indicative active. (3) Give the third person singular, active voice, of **amō** and **habeō** in the present, past, and future indicative. (4) Conjugate **invitō** in the future indicative active and passive. (5) Decline **locus**.

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

155.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

arma, -ōrum, N. <i>pl.</i>	ille, illa, illud	oppugnō, -āre
bellum, -ī, N.	ipse, ipsa, ipsum	persuādeō, -ēre
carrus, -ī, M.	irātus, -a, -um	placeō, -ēre
castra, -ōrum, N. <i>pl.</i>	is, ea, id	probō, -āre
cōnsilium, -ī, N.	parvus, -a, -um	properō, -āre
domicilium, -ī, N.	Rōmānus, -a, -um	pugnō, -āre
epistula, -ae, F.	suus, sua, suum	studeō, -ēre
fossa, -ae, F.	vester, vestra, vestrum	superō, -āre
Gallia, -ae, F.	appropinquō, -āre	terreō, -ēre
Gallus, -ī, M.	augeō, -ēre	timeō, -ēre
gladius, -ī, M.	compleō, -ēre	videō, -ēre
inimicus, -ī, M.	convocō, -āre	vulnerō, -āre
iniūria, -ae, F.	dēmōnstrō, -āre	fortiter
Italia, -ae, F.	explōrō, -āre	hodiē
lēgātus, -ī, M.	expugnō, -āre	impigrē
locus, -ī, M., N.	exspectō, -āre	longē
numerus, -ī, M.	faveō, -ēre	ōlim
populus, -ī, M.	habeō, -ēre	primō
potentia, -ae, F.	invitō, -āre	rūrsus
proelium, -ī, N.	iuvō, -āre	semper
Rōmānus, -ī, M.	maneō, -ēre	tamen
sagitta, -ae, F.	moneō, -ēre	tum
scūtum, -ī, N.	moveō, -ēre	vix
altus, -a, -um	necō, -āre	ā, ab
hic, haec, hoc	occupō, -āre	sine

156.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

armor	gladiator	population
augment	invitation	potential
complete	irate	pugnacious
epistle	occupy	student
explore	persuade	

LESSON XXI

USE OF PARTICIPLES: THE PAST PARTICIPLE

THE PARTICIPLE

157. The participle is a form of the verb which partakes of the nature of an adjective. Like the adjective, it is declined, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the word to which it belongs. The tenses of the participles of Latin verbs are present, past, and future.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

158. English has both a past active and a past passive participle: active, *having carried*; passive, *having been carried*. Latin has the past passive participle, but no past active participle.

THE FORMS OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE

159. The past participle of *portō* is *portātus, -a, -um*, declined like *bonus*. It is translated *having been carried*, or *carried*.

Saxum ā puerō portātum magnum est, the stone carried (i. e., which was carried) by the boy is large.

160. The past participle of *iuvō* is *iūtus, -a, -um*; of *dō*, *datus, -a, -um* (differing from *portātus* in having the *a* short). All other verbs of the first conjugation which have been given form their past participles like *portō*: *laudātus, amātus*, etc.

The past participle of *moneō* is *monitus, -a, -um*; of *videō*, *visus, -a, -um*.

a. The past passive participle is used in Latin more frequently than in English. It is sometimes translated by a clause: *portātum* in the illustrative sentence above may be translated, *which was carried*.

161.

VOCABULARY

albus , -a, -um, white	oppidānus , -ī, m., townsman,
concilium , -ī, n., council	inhabitant of a town
Germāni , -ōrum, m., Germans	pateō , -ēre, -uī, extend
ibi , <i>adv.</i> , there	periculōsus , -a, -um, danger-
lātē , <i>adv.</i> , widely, extensively	ous, perilous

EXERCISES

162. 1. Lēgātus concilium convocāvit, quod periculum vidēbat. 2. Concilium ā lēgātō convocātum terrēbātur. 3. Liber ab amicō datus puerō placet. 4. Oppidānī ā Germānīs superātī in oppidō manent. 5. Agrī Germānōrum lātē patēbant. 6. Rosa alba ā puellā portāta pulchra est. 7. Tēla ab his puerīs portāta periculōsa sunt. 8. Ibi nōn manēbit, quod locus periculōsus est.

163. 1. The inhabitants-of-the-town, having been called together, did not fear danger. 2. The gift given by your son is pleasing. 3. The town of the Germans is large and has a high wall. 4. We saw the white horses in the field. 5. The lieutenant, having been warned by the Germans, will move his camp. 6. The slaves, having been praised by Sextus, are working energetically.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Give the past participles of **vitō**, **accūsō**, and **postulō**, with English meanings. (2) Decline the past participle of **dō** in full. (3) Conjugate **pateō** and **invitō** in the future indicative active. (4) Name the Latin nouns from which **periculōsus** and **oppidānus** are derived. (5) Explain the case of **puerō** and of **amicō** in sentence 3, 162. (6) Give the gender and number of **portāta** in sentence 6 and sentence 7, 162.

LESSON XXII

PRINCIPAL PARTS: VERB STEMS

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

164. The present indicative active (first person singular), the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active (first person singular), and the past participle, are called the Principal Parts of the verb. Any form of a verb may be made when these are known.

The principal parts of **portō** and **moneō** are as follows:

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

a. The neuter form of the past participle is given in the principal parts, for the reason that the past participles of some verbs have no masculine or feminine forms.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

165. All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **iuvō, dō, and stō**, form their principal parts like **portō**. The principal parts of these three are as follows:

dō, dare, dedī, datum
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum
stō, stāre, steti

a. The fourth principal part of **stō** will be explained later; **dō** is irregular in having the **a** short in the infinitive.

THE STEMS OF THE VERB

166. A verb regularly has three stems: the present, the perfect, and the participial. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present active infinitive, and the perfect stem by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active (see Lessons V and XX). The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the past participle: **portātum**, stem **portāt-**; **monitum**, stem **monit-**.

USE OF THE STEMS

167. The present, the past, and the future indicative, active and passive, are formed on the present stem.

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice.

Only a few forms are made on the participial stem.

168. The principal parts of the second conjugation verbs which have been given thus far are as follows:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum
 moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
 pateō, patēre, patuī
 placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum
 studeō, studēre, studuī
 terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum
 timeō, timēre, timuī
 augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum
 maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsū
 persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsū
 compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum
 faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum
 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum
 videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum

a. The verbs of which only three principal parts are given have no past participle.

EXERCISES

169. 1. Magnum numerum equōrum in agrō vidī. 2. Amicī tuī tibi multōs librōs pulchrōs dedērunt. 3. Hic puer parvus in silvā mānsit. 4. Periculum vitāvistī et laudāberis. 5. Hunc virum saepe iūvī quod impiger est. 6. Oppidānī numquam bellō fāvērunt sed fortiter pugnābunt. 7. Amicitiae huius virī semper studuī. 8. Fīlius tuus meōs librōs ex hōc locō mōvit. 9. In multis oppidīs habitāvī et multōs amicōs habeō. 10. In eō bellō arma Gallōrum erant gladiī et sagittae.



RUINS OF ROMAN AQUEDUCT

LESSON XXIII

PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

170. The past perfect tense represents an act as completed at some specified or suggested time in the past. It is translated with the English auxiliary *had*. The tense sign is *erā*, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are the same as those of the past. The *ā* of the tense sign is shortened before the endings *-m*, *-t*, *-nt*.

portāveram, <i>I had carried</i>	monueram, <i>I had warned</i>	fueram, <i>I had been</i>
--	---	-------------------------------------

SINGULAR

portāveram	monueram	fueram
portāverās	monuerās	fuerās
portāverat	monuerat	fuerat

PLURAL

portāverāmus	monuerāmus	fuerāmus
portāverātis	monuerātis	fuerātis
portāverant	monuerant	fuerant

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

171. The future perfect tense represents an act as to be completed at some specified or suggested time in the future. The tense sign is *eri*, which is added to the perfect stem.

portāverō, <i>I shall have carried</i>	monuerō, <i>I shall have warned</i>	fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>
--	---	---

SINGULAR

portāverō	monuerō	fuerō
portāveris	monueris	fueris
portāverit	monuerit	fuerit

PLURAL

portāverimus	monuerimus	fuērimus
portāveritis	monueritis	fuēritis
portāverint	monuerint	fuērint

172.

VOCABULARY

diū , <i>adv.</i> , long, for a long time	renovō , -āre , -āvi , -ātum ,
fuga , -ae , <i>f.</i> , flight	renew
hiemō , -āre , -āvi , -ātum , win-	sī , <i>conj.</i> , if
ter, spend the winter	signum , -ī , <i>N.</i> , signal
hortus , -ī , <i>M.</i> , garden	socius , -ī , <i>M.</i> , ally

EXERCISES

173. 1. *Hī puerī diū in hortō fuerint.* 2. *Sociī nostrī fugam Germānōrum viderant.* 3. *Sī bellum renovāverint, periculum magnum erit.* 4. *Signum proelī nōn viderint.* 5. *Amicī nostrī in illō oppidō hiemāverant.* 6. *Hōs puerōs saepe monueram.* 7. *Ille vir semper amicōs iūverat.* 8. *Amicīs dōna multa nōn dederat.* 9. *Portāvit; portāverat; portāverit; fuit; fuerat; fuerit.*

174. 1. I had often warned my friend, but he did not fear. 2. Our friends will have seen many towns. 3. The flight of the allies had renewed the danger. 4. We were in the forest a long time. 5. If I see (shall have seen) the signal, I shall call together a council. 6. Why have you spent the winter in this town?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the past perfects and the future perfects in the sentences of 173, indicating the tense signs and the personal endings of each. (2) Give the principal parts of **renovō**, **iuvō**, and **videō**, and indicate the three stems of each. (3) Conjugate **dō** in the past perfect and the future perfect indicative active. (4) Give the third person plural of **iuvō** in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative active. (5) Give the dative singular of the phrase meaning *that town*.

LESSON XXIV

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE: ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION
OF TIME

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

175. The perfect tense of any verb in the passive voice is formed by combining its past participle with the present tense of the verb *sum*.

SINGULAR

portātus sum, I have been carried or I was carried
portātus es, you have been carried or you were carried
portātus est, he has been carried or he was carried

PLURAL

portātī sumus, we have been carried or we were carried
portātī estis, you have been carried or you were carried
portātī sunt, they have been carried or they were carried

monitus sum, I have been warned or I was warned

SINGULAR

monitus sum
monitus es
monitus est

PLURAL

monitī sumus
monitī estis
monitī sunt

a. The forms of this tense are translated more frequently by the English past tense, *I was carried*, etc., than by the present perfect.

176. The participle in the forms of this tense agrees with the subject in gender as well as in number.

Puer laudātus est, the boy was praised.

Puella laudāta est, the girl was praised.

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

177. A noun used to tell how long an act or a situation continues is in the accusative case.

Multās hōrās in insulā mānsī, I remained on the island many hours.

178.

VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, m., year	hōra, -ae, f., hour
circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, surround	quattuor, indecl. num., four
honestus, -a, -um, honorable	schola, -ae, f., school
	vīta, -ae, f., life

EXERCISES

179. 1. Multās hōrās in eō locō mānsērunt. 2. Hic amicus saepe laudātus est, quod vīta eius honesta est. 3. Ille puer ab agricolā monitus est et nunc bene labōrat. 4. In hōc oppidō quattuor annōs fuerō. 5. Scholae in hōc oppidō semper bonae fuērunt. 6. Haec saxa ex illō agrō ā servō portāta sunt. 7. Lēgātus oppidum mūrō et fossā circumdedit. 8. Oppidum ā lēgātō mūrō et fossā circumdatum est.

180. 1. This boy was in school four hours. 2. The boys of this school have often been praised. 3. The Romans were in Gaul many years. 4. This man's life has always been honorable and he has many friends. 5. The camp of the Germans has not been moved. 6. For many years he had a residence in Italy.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Point out the phrases in 180 which express duration of time.
- (2) Name the tense of each verb in 179. (3) Conjugate **laudō** and **videō** in the perfect indicative passive, giving English meanings.
- (4) Explain the use of the ablatives in sentences 4 and 8 of 179.
- (5) Give the ablative of the phrase meaning *four hours*. (6) Give the gender of **agricolā** in sentence 3 and of **fossā** in sentence 8 of 179.

LESSON XXV

PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE
PASSIVE: SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

THE PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

181. The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the past participle with the past tense of **sum**. The future perfect passive is formed by combining the past participle with the future of **sum**.

PAST PERFECT

portātus eram,
I had been carried

monitus eram,
I had been warned

SINGULAR

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
portātus erās, *you had been carried*
portātus erat, *he had been carried*

monitus eram
monitus erās
monitus erat

PLURAL

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
portātī erant, *they had been carried*

monitī erāmus
monitī erātis
monitī erant

FUTURE PERFECT

portātus erō,
I shall have been carried

monitus erō,
I shall have been warned

SINGULAR

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

monitus erō
monitus eris
monitus erit

PLURAL

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

monitī erimus
monitī eritis
monitī erunt

THE SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

182. A group of verb forms made up by taking any one person of a verb in all the tenses in one voice and number is called a Synopsis of the verb. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular, active voice, of the indicative mood is as follows:

PRES.	portō	PERF.	portāvī
PAST	portābam	P. PERF.	portāveram
FUT.	portābō	F. PERF.	portāverō

183.

VOCABULARY

anteā , <i>adv.</i> , formerly, before	repudiō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, reject
dominus , -ī, <i>M.</i> , master, owner	rogō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask
frumentum , -ī, <i>N.</i> , grain	stipendium , -ī, <i>N.</i> , tribute, tax
quinque , <i>indecl. numeral</i> , five	supportō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bring up, furnish

EXERCISES

184. 1. Hic servus ā dominō saepe monitus est. 2. Multa saxa ā puerō portāta sunt. 3. Stipendium ā Germānīs numquam anteā datum erat. 4. Amicitia nostra ab his virīs repudiāta est. 5. Auxilium tuum in proeliō rogātum est. 6. Frumentum ā sociīs nostrīs hodiē supportātum erit. 7. In insulā quinque hōrās fuerāmus. 8. Stipendium ā Gallīs datum magnum erat. 9. Bellum ā Germānīs renovātum erat et multa oppida expugnāta erant.

185. 1. Help had been asked but had not been given. 2. Formerly the council had often been called together. 3. Grain has been furnished and we shall now move camp. 4. Why had the Germans rejected the friendship of the Romans? 5. The lieutenant remained in Gaul four years. 6. The town will have been captured by the Gauls.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **portō** in the third person singular passive, and of **monēō** in the third person plural active, indicative mood. (2) Conjugate **videō** in the past perfect passive and the future perfect passive of the indicative, giving the English meanings. (3) Explain the case of **hōrās** in sentence 7, 184. (4) Conjugate **repudiō** in the perfect passive indicative. (5) Conjugate **sum** in the past perfect and in the future perfect of the indicative. (6) Give the vocative singular of **dominus**.

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

- 186.** (1) The declension of **is**.
 (2) Possessives of the third person.
 (3) The past indicative passive of the first and second conjugations.
 (4) The future indicative active and passive of the first and second conjugations.
 (5) The perfect indicative active.
 (6) The past perfect indicative active.
 (7) The future perfect indicative active.
 (8) The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect passive.
 (9) The past participle.
 (10) The principal parts of verbs.
 (11) The dative with special verbs.
 (12) The accusative of duration.
 (13) The ablative of means.

187. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

annual	renovate	social
council	repudiate	support
dominate	scholastic	stipend
horticulture	signal	vital

LESSON XXVI

**FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE: PREPOSITIONS WITH
ACCUSATIVE****THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE**

188. Latin verbs have a future active participle formed on the participial stem. It is declined like the past passive participle, from which it is to be distinguished by **-ūr**, preceding the case ending.

portātūrus, -a, -um, about to carry, or going to carry.

monitūrus, -a, -um, about to warn, or going to warn.

a. Some verbs which have no past participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is given as the fourth principal part.

The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus**. The principal parts of **sum** are **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**. The fourth of the principal parts of **stō** is **stātūrus**.

189. The future participle is often combined with the forms of **sum** to refer to something which some one intends to do or is about to do.

Mānsūrus eram, I was about to remain, I intended to remain.

Laudātūrus est, he is about to praise, he intends to praise.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

190. A number of prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. With some of these the object is used to name the place toward which motion is directed. Others express ideas of relation in situation, like the English *beyond, in front of, behind, around*. A few express abstract relations, such as *on account of, against, about*.

191.

VOCABULARY

ad , <i>prep. with accusative</i> , to,	post , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , behind, after
toward	propter , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , on
adversus , -a, -um, unfavor-	account of
able, opposed	sex , <i>indecl. num.</i> , six
in , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , into	trāns , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , across,
mora , -ae, f., delay	beyond

a. The ablative with **in** tells where an act takes place or where something exists. The accusative with **in** names the place to which an act is directed.

EXERCISES

192. 1. Propter adversum proelium socii nostri in oppidō mānsērunt. 2. Ad hunc locum sine morā Rōmānī castra mōvērunt. 3. Tibi multa dōna datūrus sum. 4. Fēmina filiam suam in hortum vocāvit. 5. Castra Germānōrum trāns eam silvam erant. 6. Fossa alta post oppidum est. 7. Sex viri in viā ambulant. 8. Hunc puerum monitūrus erās. 9. Concilium sine morā convocāvi et periculum dēmōnstrāvī. 10. Nōn diū in hōc locō mānsūrī sumus.

193. 1. On account of the great danger there will be delay. 2. The lieutenant invited the Germans to the camp. 3. The slaves carried the weapons and the grain into the town. 4. The horses and carts are behind the forest. 5. The master of the slaves lives beyond those fields. 6. You (*plur.*) have been defeated because you did not ask aid.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Give the future active participles of **augeō**, **moneō**, and **dō**.
- (2) Mention some of the prepositions which take the ablative. (3) Conjugate **dēmōnstrō** in the perfect indicative active and passive.
- (4) Explain the case of **hortum**, in sentence 4, and of **viā**, in sentence 7, **192**. (5) Give the principal parts of **moveō**. (6) Give a synopsis of **vocō** in the first person plural of the indicative passive.

LESSON XXVII

THIRD CONJUGATION, *Ō* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE:
DATIVE OF PURPOSETHE THIRD CONJUGATION, *Ō* VERBS

194. The present active infinitive of the third conjugation ends in *-ere*. The stem ending *-e* is replaced in most forms of the present indicative by *-i* or *-u*.

195. Verbs which have all their forms in the third conjugation are conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

dūcō, I lead

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

dūcō, I lead

dūcor, I am led

dūcis, you lead

dūceris or dūcere, you are led

dūcit, he leads

dūcitur, he is led

PLURAL

dūcimus, we lead

dūcimur, we are led

dūcitīs, you lead

dūcimīnī, you are led

dūcunt, they lead

dūcuntur, they are led

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

196. The purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve is sometimes expressed by the dative.

Cōpiās subsidiō misit, he sent the troops as reinforcements
(to serve as reinforcements).

a. The dative of purpose is often used where the English idiom would require a predicate nominative.

Amicitia tua semper mihi auxiliō fuit, your friendship
has always been a help to me (for a help to me).

197.

VOCABULARY

ante , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , before, in front of; <i>adv.</i> , previously	mittō , -ere, misī , missum , send
cōpia , -ae, <i>F.</i> , supply; <i>pl.</i> , forces	relinquō , -ere, reliquī , relictum , leave
dūcō , -ere, dūxī , ductum , lead	septem , <i>indecl. num.</i> , seven
impedimentum , -ī, <i>N.</i> , hindrance; <i>pl.</i> , baggage	subsidiū , -ī, <i>N.</i> , reinforcements, reserves

EXERCISES

198. 1. Lēgātus magnās cōpiās ad proelium dūcit. 2. Multās epistulās ad amīcōs mittimus. 3. Septem Gallī in proeliō necātī sunt. 4. Hic mūrus magnō impedimentō fuit. 5. Servus ad oppidum mittitur. 6. Multī virī subsidiō mittuntur. 7. Puella librōs in viā relinquit. 8. Librī ante portam in viā ā puellā relinquuntur.

199. 1. The forces of the Romans are again sent into Gaul. 2. He gave me the book as a gift (for a gift). 3. I shall send these men as reinforcements. 4. There was a large forest in front of the town. 5. The slave leaves the weapons in the street. 6. On account of the delay we shall call together a council.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **mittō** and **relinquō** in the present indicative, active and passive. (2) Name the prepositions which have been used thus far with the accusative. (3) Give the future active participles of **dūcō** and **mittō**. (4) Explain the case of **subsidiō** in sentence 6, and of **puellā** in sentence 8, 198. (5) Give the principal parts of the verb **necō**. (6) Give the terminations of the present active infinitive in the first, second, and third conjugations.

LESSON XXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE:
SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

200. The present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **-ire**. The present indicative is as follows:

audiō, I hear

ACTIVE

audiō, *I hear*
audis, *you hear*
audit, *he hears*

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

audior, *I am heard*
audiris or audire, *you are heard*
auditur, *he is heard*

PLURAL

audimus, *we hear* audimur, *we are heard*
auditis, *you hear* audiminī, *you are heard*
audiunt, *they hear* audiuntur, *they are heard*

THE SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

201. Adjectives are often used as nouns, especially in the masculine plural and in the neuter plural: **multi** is translated *many men*, or *many*; **multa** is translated *many things*. In military language **nostrī** means *our men* or *our soldiers*.

Multi periculum vidērunt, *many saw the danger*.

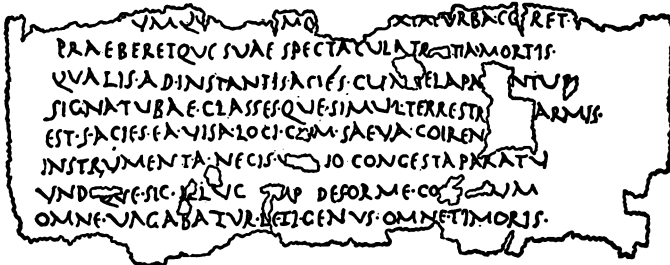
202.

VOCABULARY

audiō, -ire, audivī, auditum, hear	mūniō, -ire, mūnivī, mūni- tum, fortify
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, carry, carry on; bellum	octō, indecl. num., eight
gerere, wage war	sonus, -ī, M., sound
inter, prep. w. acc., among, between	tuba, -ae, F., trumpet
	veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, come

EXERCISES

203. 1. Sonum tubārum audiō. 2. Germānī castra hodiē mūniunt. 3. Lēgātus cum sociis venit. 4. Nōn saepe bellum gerimus. 5. Castra inter silvam et oppidum ā nostris mūniuntur. 6. Octō equōs in agrō vidēmus. 7. Sonus tubae ā nostris auditur. 8. Ab hīs pueris audīmur sed nōn vidēmur. 9. Virī sonum proeli audiunt et timent. 10. Venīs quod vocātus es. 11. Rōmānī in Galliā bellum gestūrī erant.



FRAGMENT OF PAPYRUS ROLL FROM HERCULANEUM

204. 1. Our men are fortifying this town. 2. War is being waged with the Gauls. 3. This field is between the road and the forest. 4. That town had seven gates. 5. Many are coming with their weapons as reinforcements (for reinforcement). 6. We hear the sound of carts and horses in the street.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Indicate the stem and the ending of **audītur** in sentence 7, 203.
- (2) Point out the difference between the formation of the first person plurals of **gerō** and of **audiō**.
- (3) Conjugate **veniō** in the present indicative active, and **mūniō** in the present indicative active and passive.
- (4) Give the third person plural of **rogō**, **videō**, and **audiō** in the present indicative, active and passive.
- (5) Give the future active participles of **audiō** and **gerō**.
- (6) Explain the use of **nostris** in sentence 5, 203.

LESSON XXIX

PAST INDICATIVE OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS:
CONSTRUCTION WITH *IUBEŌ*

THE PAST INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

205. The past tense of third conjugation verbs which are conjugated like *dūcō* is formed in exactly the same manner as the past tense of second conjugation verbs. Fourth conjugation verbs have *iē* before the tense sign.

dūcēbam, I was leading

dūcēbar, I was being led

audiēbam, I was hearing

audiēbar, I was being heard

ACTIVE	PASSIVE		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
		SINGULAR		
<i>dūcēbam</i>	<i>dūcēbar</i>		<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>
<i>dūcēbās</i>	<i>dūcēbāris, -re</i>		<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbāris, -re</i>
<i>dūcēbat</i>	<i>dūcēbātur</i>		<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>
		PLURAL		
<i>dūcēbāmus</i>	<i>dūcēbāmur</i>		<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>
<i>dūcēbātis</i>	<i>dūcēbāminī</i>		<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbāminī</i>
<i>dūcēbant</i>	<i>dūcēbantur</i>		<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>

CONSTRUCTION WITH *IUBEŌ*

206. The verb *iubeō* may take as an object an infinitive with subject accusative.

Eum manēre iubēmus, we order him to remain.

207.

VOCABULARY

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetians, an important Gallic tribe

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, order, command

prōvincia, -ae, f., province, the Province, the south-eastern part of Gaul

reperiō, -īre, repperī, reper-tum, find, find out

statim, adv., at once

trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum, surrender (transitive)

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

vincō, -ere, vicī, victum, conquer, defeat

EXERCISES

208. 1. Helvētīī cōpiās ex castrīs dūcēbant. 2. Cūr huic virō armā tua nōn trādis? 3. Gallōs vincēbāmus quod arma bona habēbāmus. 4. Hunc puerum statim venīre iussī. 5. Nostrī auxiliō tum veniēbant. 6. Tēla ā lēgātō in hōc domiciliō reperta sunt. 7. Rōmānī bellum in Galliā gerēbant, et multa oppida Gallōrum expugnāverant. 8. Hic locus numquam tūtus fuit. 9. Bellum ā Gallīs in prōvinciā gerēbātur.

209. 1. The lieutenant orders the Helvetians to find the weapons at once. 2. The townspeople were surrendering their arms to the lieutenant. 3. The province is now safe. 4. We were sending many books and letters. 5. The women and children were coming from the town.



ROMAN CENTURION

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the tense signs and the personal endings in the verbs of sentences 1, 3, and 9, 208. (2) Conjugate *trādō* and *reperiō* in the present active indicative and the past active indicative. (3) Explain the use of the infinitive *venīre* in sentence 4, 208. (4) Point out an adjective used as a noun in the sentences of 208. (5) Explain the case of *Galliā* in sentence 7, 208. (6) Conjugate *iubeō* in the perfect indicative active.

LESSON XXX

FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: ABLATIVE OF TIME

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

210. The tense sign of the future in the third and fourth conjugations is **ē**, except in the first person singular, where it appears as **a**. In the fourth conjugation the tense sign is preceded by **i**. In third conjugation verbs like **dūcō**, the tense sign replaces the vowel in which the present stem ends.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

dūcam, *I shall lead*
dūcēs, *you will lead*
dūcet, *he will lead*

audiam, *I shall hear*
audiēs, *you will hear*
audiet, *he will hear*

PLURAL

dūcēmus, *we shall lead*
dūcētis, *you will lead*
dūcent, *they will lead*

audiēmus, *we shall hear*
audiētis, *you will hear*
audient, *they will hear*

PASSIVE

dūcar, *I shall be led*

audiar, *I shall be heard*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

dūcar
dūcēris, -re
dūcētur

dūcēmur
dūcēminī
dūcentur

SINGULAR

PLURAL

audiar
audiēris, -re
audiētur

audiēmur
audiēminī
audientur

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

211. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate the time at which or within which an act is done or a situation exists. It is commonly translated with the English prepositions *in* or *at*.

Eō annō concilium convocātum est, *the council was called together in that year.*

212.

VOCABULARY

āmittō, -ere, āmisī, āmissum,	decem, indecl. num., ten
lose	excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessum, withdraw
celeriter, adv., swiftly,	nātūra, -ae, f., nature
rapidly	novus, -a, -um, new
contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum, contend; hasten	primus, -a, -um, first

EXERCISES

213. 1. Propter nātūram locī magnās cōpiās nōn dūcēbāmus. 2. Gallī eō annō multa oppida āmisērunt. 3. Germānī cum cōpiīs nostrīs saepe ante castra contendunt. 4. Helvētīī eō bellō vincentur. 5. Hī virī decem hōrās labōrāvērunt. 6. Primā hōrā oppidum occupābitur. 7. Sī perīculum erit, celeriter veniam. 8. Puerōs fossam complēre iubēbit. 9. Cōpiae nostrae ex castrīs nōn excēdent. 10. Nostrī cum Germānīs ante castra contendunt.

214. 1. We shall hasten from the camp at the first hour. 2. The slave will find out the nature of the place. 3. The sound of weapons will be heard by the women. 4. The men are withdrawing from the towns to the forests. 5. The forces of the Germans are coming swiftly.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the third person singular of **dūcō** and **audiō** in the present, past, and future tenses of the indicative active. (2) Give the third person plural of **mittō** and **moneō** in these three tenses of the indicative passive. (3) Conjugate **vincō** and **mūniō** in the future indicative active and passive. (4) Explain the difference between the idea of time which is expressed by the ablative and that which is expressed by the accusative (177, 211). (5) Point out the examples of the ablative of time in the sentences of 213.

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

215.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

annus, -ī, M.	audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
concilium, -ī, N.	circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum
cōpia, -ae, F.	contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
dominus, -ī, M.	dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
frūmentum, -ī, N.	gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum
fuga, -ae, F.	hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
hortus, -ī, M.	iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussum
mora, -ae, F.	mittō, -ere, misi, missum
nātūra, -ae, F.	mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
oppidānus, -ī, M.	pateō, -ēre, -uī
prōvincia, -ae, F.	relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictum
schola, -ae, F.	reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum
signum, -ī, N.	repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
socius, -ī, M.	rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
sonus, -ī, M.	supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
stīpendium, -ī, N.	trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
tuba, -ae, F.	veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum
vīta, -ae, F.	vincō, -ere, vicī, victum

adversus, -a, -um
 albus, -a, -um
 honestus, -a, -um
 periculōsus, -a, -um
 primus, -a, -um
 tūtus, -a, -um

anteā	ad
celeriter	ante
diū	inter
ibi	post
lātē	propter
statim	trāns

216.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

adverse	interstate	primary
audible	missive	provincial
contention	natural	relinquish
copious	novelty	sonorous
decimal	postpone	transport

LESSON XXXI

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION ENDING IN *-iō*

217. There are two classes of verbs in the third conjugation, commonly distinguished as *ō* verbs and *iō* verbs. The *ō* verbs are those which are conjugated like *dūcō*. The *iō* verbs are conjugated in the present indicative partly like *dūcō* and partly like verbs of the fourth conjugation. In the past indicative and the future indicative they are conjugated exactly like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

capiō, I take

PRESENT			
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>caperis, -re</i>	<i>capiminī</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>
PAST			
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capiebam</i>	<i>capiebāmus</i>	<i>capiebar</i>	<i>capiebāmur</i>
<i>capiebās</i>	<i>capiebātis</i>	<i>capiebāris, -re</i>	<i>capiebāminī</i>
<i>capiebat</i>	<i>capiebant</i>	<i>capiebātur</i>	<i>capiebantur</i>
FUTURE			
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris, -re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capietur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

a. In the first person plural and the second person plural of both voices, and in the second person singular of the active voice in the present tense, the forms of the verbs of this class are to be distinguished from the corresponding forms of the fourth conjugation by the fact

that the connecting vowel, *i*, is short. In the second person singular of the passive in the present tense the connecting vowel is *e*, while in the corresponding form of the fourth conjugation it is *i*.

218.

VOCABULARY

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture	iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do	incognitus, -a, -um, unknown
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee	nihil, indecl., N., nothing
	nūntius, -ī, M., messenger
	pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place

EXERCISES

219. 1. Nūntius in oppidō capiētur et necābitur. 2. Puer carrum parvum facit. 3. Tēla ā Germānīs et Gallīs iaciuntur. 4. Nostrī in eō oppidō multum frūmentum capiēbant. 5. Sī oppidum capiētur, fugiēmus. 6. Rōmānī castra ante silvam pōnent. 7. Is locus incognitus erat sed nōn timēbāmus. 8. Ille vir multās iniūriās faciēbat. 9. Puerī fugiēbant quod pericūlum vidēbant. 10. Multī dē mūrō tēla iaciēbant.

220. 1. The boy takes the sword and shield. 2. The slave will throw a weapon over (across) the wall. 3. Why were you fleeing from the camp? 4. We were making a large number of shields. 5. The town will be taken by the Germans.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Conjugate **iaciō** and **reperiō** in the present indicative passive.
- (2) Conjugate **pōnō** and **faciō** in the past indicative active. (3) Give the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations.
- (4) Conjugate **videō** and **faciō** in the future indicative active. (5) Indicate the stem, tense sign, and personal ending of **timēbāmus**, in sentence 7, 219.

LESSON XXXII

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN THE PRESENT
SYSTEM, INDICATIVE MOOD

221.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

	TERMINATIONS	STEM
I. portāre	-āre	portā-
II. monēre	-ēre	monē-
III. { dūcere	-ere	dūce- }
{ capere		
IV. audire	-ire	audi-

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

222. The present tense is formed by adding the personal endings to the present stem. In the first person singular of the first conjugation and of the *ō* verbs of the third conjugation the stem vowel disappears. In the third conjugation the vowel of the stem ending becomes *u* before **-nt** and **-ntur**. It becomes *i* before all other endings except **-ris**. In all *iō* verbs **-nt** and **-ntur** are preceded by *iu*.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portō	monēō	dūcō	capīō	audiō
portās	monēs	dūcis	capis	audis
portat	monet	dūcit	capit	audit

PLURAL

portāmus	monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audimus
portātis	monētis	dūcitis	capitis	auditis
portant	monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

portor	moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
portāris, -re	monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audiris, -re
portātūr	monētūr	dūcitur	capitur	auditur

PLURAL

portāmur	monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audimur
portāminī	monēminī	dūcimini	capimini	audimini
portantur	monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

THE PAST INDICATIVE

223. The sign of the past tense, **bā**, appears in all four conjugations. In third conjugation **ō** verbs the short **e** of the stem becomes long before **bā**, making their past tense identical with that of the second conjugation. Third conjugation verbs in **iō** and all fourth conjugation verbs have the tense sign preceded by **iē**.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portābam	monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
portābās	monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
portābat	monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat

PLURAL

portābāmus	monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
portābātis	monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
portābant	monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

portābar	monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
portābāris, -re	monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
portābātūr	monēbātūr	dūcēbātūr	capiēbātūr	audiēbātūr

PLURAL				
portābāmur	monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
portābāminī	monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
portābantur	monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE

224. In the first and second conjugations the tense sign is **bi** except in the third person plural, in which it appears as **bu**, and in the second person singular of the passive, where it becomes **be**. The **i** disappears before **-ō** and **-or**. In the third and fourth conjugations the tense sign is **ē** (in the first person singular, **a**). The **i** of the **iō** verbs of the third conjugation and of the verbs of the fourth conjugation is retained.

ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
I.	II.	III.		IV.
portābō	monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portābis	monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
portābit	monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
PLURAL				
portābimus	monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
portābitis	monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
portābunt	monēbunt	dūcent	capiunt	audient
PASSIVE				
SINGULAR				
portābor	monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portāberis, -re	monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
portābitur	monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
PLURAL				
portābimur	monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
portābimini	monēbimini	dūcēmini	capiēmini	audiēmini
portābuntur	monēbuntur	dūcentur	capiuntur	audientur

225.

VOCABULARY

captivus, -i, m., prisoner**castellum, -i, n.**, fort, redoubt**cōficiō, -ere, cōfēcī, cōfec-**
tum, finish, complete**iterum, adv.**, again**lūna, -ae, f.**, moon**magnopere, adv.**, greatly**pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sub-**
due, make peaceful**victōria, -ae, f.**, victory

BRIDGE OVER THE TIBER

EXERCISES

226. 1. In castris multī captīvī et servī erant. 2. Galli castella Rōmānōrum oppugnābunt sed nōn capient. 3. Germānī ante novam lūnam nōn contendēt. 4. Tum castella faciēbāmus quod magnopere perīculum timēbāmus. 5. Quod Gallia pācāta erat, bellum nōn timēbātur. 6. Hoc bellum nōn celeriter cōficiētur. 7. Ea victōria magna fuit et multa oppida capta sunt. 8. Auxilium tuum, mī amīce, iterum postulō.

227. 1. We saw many prisoners in the camp. 2. The Germans will not again attack this fort, but they will capture the camp. 3. Ireland was never subdued by the Romans. 4. This victory will frighten the Gauls greatly and they will flee from their towns.

LESSON XXXIII

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM, INDICATIVE MOOD:
WORD ORDER

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

228. (1) The formation of the perfect system is the same in all four conjugations. The perfect stem (which is used only in the active voice) is found by dropping the *i* of the perfect active indicative, the third of the principal parts. The endings of the perfect indicative active are the same for all verbs.

SINGULAR					
I.	II.	III.		IV.	TERMINATIONS
portāvi	monui	dūxī	cēpī	audīvi	-i
portāvisti	monuisti	dūxisti	cēpisti	audīvisti	-isti
portāvit	monuit	dūxit	cēpit	audīvit	-it
PLURAL					
portāvimus	monuimus	dūximus	cēpimus	audīvimus	-imus
portāvistis	monuistis	dūxistis	cēpistis	audīvistis	-istis
portāverunt	monuerunt	dūxerunt	cēperunt	audīverunt	-erunt
or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre

(2) The sign of the past perfect indicative is **erā**, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are those used in the past active.

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portāveram	monueram	dūxeram	cēperam	audīveram
portāverās,	monuerās,	dūxerās,	cēperās,	audīverās,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

(3) The sign of the future perfect is **eri**, which is added to the perfect stem. Before *ō* the *i* of the tense sign disappears.

portāverō	monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audīverō
portāveris,	monueris,	dūxeris,	cēperis,	audīveris,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

229. The formation of the perfect system in the passive is the same in all four conjugations. The perfect is made up of the past passive participle and the present tense of **sum**; the past perfect of the past passive participle and the past tense of **sum**; and the future perfect of the past passive participle and the future tense of **sum**.

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
portātus sum	portātus eram	portātus erō
monitus sum,	monitus eram,	monitus erō,
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

VARIATION FROM THE NORMAL WORD ORDER

230. The normal order of a Latin sentence requires that the subject, with its modifiers, stand first, and that the verb, preceded by its modifiers, stand last. But there are many requirements of emphasis which may change this order. Any word which is to be emphasized may stand in a different position in the sentence from that in which it would normally be placed. The fact that the form of a Latin word shows what its relation is to other words, makes possible a much freer arrangement in Latin than in English. If the subject is to be made emphatic, it may be placed last instead of first. But the fact that any word is put in an unusual position means that one or more of the other words in the sentence will be crowded out of the normal position. Sometimes the normal order is changed merely for the sake of variety.

231.**VOCABULARY**

animus , -ī, M., mind, courage, spirit	pervenīō , -īre, pervēnī , per- ventum , arrive
cārus , -a, -um, dear	recipiō , -ere, recēpī , recep- tum , receive, take back
iūstitia , -ae, F., justice	rēgnum , -ī, N., royal author- ity, kingdom
Labiēnus , -ī, M., Labienus, <i>an</i> <i>officer in Caesar's army</i>	trīdium , -ī, N., three days
nōndum , <i>adv.</i> , not yet	

EXERCISES

232. 1. Rōmānīs cāra fuit patria. 2. Ibi trīduum mānsi sed audīvī nihil. 3. Hic vir propter iūstitiam laudātus est. 4. Labiēnus trīduō cum cōpiīs suīs in hoc oppidum pervēnit. 5. Nōndum āmissus est animus. 6. Multōs Gallōs ad castellum dūxerat. 7. Eī virī in oppidum receptī sunt. 8. Tum rēgnum occupāvit et multōs necāvit. 9. Captivī poenam timēbant et ex castrīs fūgērunt. 10. Ā Labiēnō saepe Gallōrum cōpiaie vietae erant. 11. Dūxistis; cēpistis; audīvērunt; cēpit; cēperat; cēperit. 12. Audītus est; audītus erat; audītus erit; captī sunt; captī erant; captī erunt.



THE ROMAN FORUM IN ITS PRESENT CONDITION

233. 1. In three days I shall have arrived in Gaul. 2. Our allies had placed the standard on the wall. 3. The royal authority has been seized and the towns have been captured. 4. We had fortified the camp and were awaiting the forces of the Germans. 5. I came, I saw, I conquered.

LESSON XXXIV

ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE IN *-ius*

234. There are nine adjectives which have the genitive singular ending in *-ius* and the dative singular ending in *-ī*. In the other cases of the singular and in all the cases of the plural they have the same endings as adjectives of the first and second declensions. The vocative is lacking except in rare uses of *ūnus* and *sōlus*. Most of these words are used also as pronouns. They are as follows:

alius, alia, aliud, another	ūnus, -a, -um, one
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only	tōtus, -a, -um, whole
ūllus, -a, -um, any	nūllus, -a, -um, no

alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*)

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither

uter, utra, utrum, which (*of two*)

235. These adjectives are declined as follows:

SINGULAR

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	alterius	alterius	alterius
sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

PLURAL

sōlī	sōlae	sōla, etc.	alterī	alterae	altera, etc.
------	-------	---------------	--------	---------	-----------------

a. **Alius** has the neuter **aliud**. Otherwise it is declined like the remaining words of the group. The *i* of the genitive ending of **alter** is sometimes short (**alterius**).

b. These words are sometimes used in pairs (correlatives) as follows:

alius.....alius = one another.

alii.....alii = some others.

alter.....alter = one the other.

alteri....alteri = the one party....the other party.

Alius fugit, alius manet in castris, one flees, another remains in the camp.

EXERCISES

236. 1. Unum virum et decem pueros vidimus. 2. Alter fugit, alter captus est. 3. Alii statim venerunt, alii in oppido manserunt. 4. Alius gladium gerabat, alius nulla arma habebat. 5. Gladius meus mihi auxilio fuit. 6. Murus neutrius oppidi altus est. 7. Utri puellae donum dedisti? 8. Amicitiam totius Italiae repudiavit. 9. Alteri in castris manserunt, alteri ad silvam fugerunt. 10. Nullius insulae; Labienus soli; ullius morae; alterius loci.

237. 1. The nature of the whole place was unknown. 2. The one was a Gaul, the other was a German. 3. He will give a reward to the messenger alone. 4. Some fight bravely, others hasten from the camp. 5. One demands aid, another avoids danger. 6. This boy has no book. 7. The danger of neither is great.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **auxilio** in sentence 5, 236. (2) Decline together **neuter liber**. (3) Decline together **unum oppidum**. (4) Give a synopsis of **amitto** in the third singular active of the indicative. (5) Conjugate **trado** in the perfect passive indicative and the past perfect passive indicative. (6) Conjugate **recipio** in the future perfect, active and passive.

LESSON XXXV

THE THIRD DECLENSION

238. The third declension has three classes of nouns, known as Consonant Stems, i-Stems, and Mixed Stems. The genitive ending is **-is**.

a. Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s**. If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g** the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x**: **dux**, nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lēx** nominative from the stem **lēg-**. If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t** the final consonant is dropped before **-s**: **laus**, nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **princeps**, nominative from the stem **princip-**, **miles**, nominative from the stem **milit-**.

Consonant stems are declined as follows:

lēx, F., *law*

BASE, **lēg-**

NOM. **lēx**
GEN. **lēgis**
DAT. **lēgī**
ACC. **lēgem**
ABL. **lēge**

mīles, M., *soldier*

BASE, **milit-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **mīles**
GEN. **mīlitis**
DAT. **mīlitī**
ACC. **mīlitem**
ABL. **mīlite**

TERMINATIONS

-s
-is
-ī
-em
-e

PLURAL

NOM. **lēgēs**
GEN. **lēgum**
DAT. **lēgibus**
ACC. **lēgēs**
ABL. **lēgibus**

NOM. **mīlitēs**
GEN. **mīlitum**
DAT. **mīlitibus**
ACC. **mīlitēs**
ABL. **mīlitibus**

-ēs
-um
-ibus
-ēs
-ibus

b. Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**.

c. Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**, **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-**. The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

frāter, M., *brother*

BASE, **frātr-**

homō, *man*

BASE, **homin-**

		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	frāter	NOM. homō	—
GEN.	frātris	GEN. hominis	-is
DAT.	frātrī	DAT. hominī	-ī
ACC.	frātre	ACC. hominem	-em
ABL.	frātre	ABL. homine	-e
		PLURAL	
NOM.	frātrēs	NOM. hominēs	-ēs
GEN.	frātrum	GEN. hominum	-um
DAT.	frātribus	DAT. hominibus	-ibus
ACC.	frātrēs	ACC. hominēs	-ēs
ABL.	frātribus	ABL. hominibus	-ibus

d. Nouns with stems ending in **-ōn** form the nominative by dropping **n**: **legiō** from the stem **legiōn-**.

e. Most nouns with stems ending in **-l** or **-r** have the nominative identical with the stem. A long vowel of the stem is shortened before a final **l** or **r** of the nominative.

f. The base is identical with the stem in nouns with consonant stems. Since the base can always be found by dropping the genitive ending, any noun of this class can be declined according to the models given above when its genitive is known.

239.

VOCABULARY

condūcō, -ere, condūxī, con-	interficiō, -ere, interfēcī,
ductum, bring together,	interfectum, kill
collect	item, adv., also, likewise
frāter, frātris, m., brother	lēx, lēgis, f., law
homō, hominis, m., man,	miles, militis, m., soldier
human being	rēx, rēgis, m., king

EXERCISES

240. 1. Rēx multōs militēs habuit. 2. Frāter meus item miles fuit et in bellō vulnerātus est. 3. Hanc lēgem probāmus et laudāmus. 4. Ad eum locum magnum numerum militum condūxit. 5. Rēx ab inimicō interfectus est. 6. Hī hominēs lēgēs nōn timent. 7. Aliī gladiōs trādidērunt, aliī interfectī sunt. 8. Is vir potentiam nulliūs rēgis timet. 9. Hōrum hominum alter amīcus (est), alter incognitus est.

241. 1. This law is good, but it was then unknown. 2. The king had brought together into the town a large number of men. 3. Your brother also saw the soldiers in the forest. 4. Many Gauls were killed in flight by the soldiers. 5. This man has lost his brother and his son. 6. The slave is alone in the field.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **lēx bona**. (2) Decline together **frāter meus**. (3) Give the accusative plural of **sagitta, ager, and frāter**. (4) Give the genitive singular of the words meaning *one soldier*. (5) Give the principal parts of **trādidērunt**. (6) Give the base of the noun **rēx**.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

- 242.** (1) The third declension of nouns, consonant stems.
(2) Adjectives with the genitive in **-ius**.
(3) The present indicative of the third conjugation, **ō** verbs.
(4) The present indicative of the fourth conjugation.
(5) The past indicative of the third and fourth conjugations.
(6) The future indicative of the third and fourth conjugations.
(7) The present, past, and future of **iō** verbs of the third conjugation.
(8) The future active participle.
(9) The substantive use of adjectives.
(10) The dative of purpose.
(11) The accusative with prepositions.
(12) The ablative of time.

243. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation :

animated	impediment	nullify
alternate	item	reception
captive	justice	regal
castle	legal	sole
conduct	lunar	subsidy
fact	military	total
fraternal	neutral	union
fugitive	nihilist	victory

LESSON XXXVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS (Continued):
DATIVE OF REFERENCE

NEUTER CONSONANT STEMS

244. There are many neuter nouns among the consonant stems of the third declension. These, like the masculine and feminine nouns, form the nominative in different ways.

a. Nouns which have **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

flūmen, N., *river*

BASE, **flūmin-**

caput, N., *head*

BASE, **capit-**

		SINGULAR	TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	flūmen	NOM. caput	—
GEN.	flūminis	GEN. capitis	-is
DAT.	flūminī	DAT. capiti	-ī
ACC.	flūmeū	ACC. caput	—
ABL.	flūmine	ABL. capite	-e
		PLURAL	
NOM.	flūmina	NOM. capita	-a
GEN.	flūminum	GEN. capitum	-um
DAT.	flūminibus	DAT. capitibus	-ibus
ACC.	flūmina	ACC. capita	-a
ABL.	flūminibus	ABL. capitibus	-ibus

b. Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us**: **genus** from the stem **gener-**, **corpus** from the stem **corpor-**.¹ The nominative **iter** used with the stem **itiner-** is somewhat irregular.

¹ In these words the stem ending was originally **-s**.

corpus, N., *body*
BASE, **corpor-**

iter, N., *journey, road*
BASE, **itiner-**

		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	corpus	NOM. iter	—
GEN.	corporis	GEN. itineris	-is
DAT.	corporī	DAT. itinerī	-ī
ACC.	corpus	ACC. iter	—
ABL.	corpore	ABL. itinere	-e
		PLURAL	
NOM.	corpora	NOM. itinera	-a
GEN.	corporum	GEN. itinerum	-um
DAT.	corporibus	DAT. itineribus	-ibus
ACC.	corpora	ACC. itinera	-a
ABL.	corporibus	ABL. itineribus	-ibus

THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE

245. The dative is often used to refer to a person who is likely to be affected favorably or unfavorably by an act or situation, or with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This is called the Dative of Reference.

Librum amicō ēmi, *I bought a book for a friend.*

a. This use of the dative is sometimes found with words denoting things.

b. The dative of reference is often used in connection with a dative of purpose.

Militēs oppidānis auxiliō erant, *the soldiers were a help (for a help) to the townspeople.*

Vir amicō auxiliō vēnit, *the man came to help (as a help for) his friend.*

246.

VOCABULARY

armatus, -a, -um, armed	flūmen, flūminis, N., river
caput, capitis, N., head	iter, itineris, N., march, jour-
corpus, corporis, N., body	ney, road
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, exhausted	nēmō, dat. nēmini, acc. nē- minem (<i>no genitive or abl.</i>), ¹
emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptum, buy	no one.

EXERCISES

247. 1. Id flūmen lātum et altum est. 2. Hī hominēs magna corpora habent, sed nōn militēs bonī erunt. 3. Frāter tuus iter longum fēcerat et dēfessus erat. 4. Hic equus pulcher caput parvum habet. 5. Tum lēgātus militēs suōs celeriter condūxit quod Germānī appropinquābant. 6. Antea nēmō in eō oppidō armātus erat, nunc multī arma habent. 7. Hic homō equum filiō suō ēmit. 8. Gallī magnō auxiliō Rōmānis in eō bellō erant.

248. 1. The head of that statue is beautiful. 2. The Gauls fought in the river and many were killed. 3. I saw no one on that journey. 4. The soldiers were a great help to our friends in danger. 5. The boys have worked industriously and are tired out. 6. I bought these books for my brother.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **emō** in the present and future indicative, active and passive. (2) Give a synopsis of **videō** in the third person singular, indicative passive. (3) Give a synopsis of **emō** in the third person plural, indicative active. (4) Decline together the words which mean *a beautiful river*. (5) Explain the case of **auxiliō** and of **Rōmānis**, in sentence 8, 247.

¹ The missing genitive and ablative forms of this word are supplied by the genitive and ablative forms of **nūllus**.

LESSON XXXVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, /-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE PLURAL FORMS

249. Nouns with i-stems and mixed stems have the genitive plural ending in **-ium**. Masculine and feminine nouns of these classes may have either **-ēs** or **-īs** as the ending of the accusative plural. In the singular they are usually declined like consonant stems.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE /-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

250. (1) Nouns which have the nominative ending in **-īs** or **-ēs**, and which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, are i-stem nouns.

(2) The most important mixed stems are:

- a. Monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant: **mōns**, **arx**.
- b. Words of more than one syllable ending in **-ns** or **-rs**; **cliēns**, **cohors**.
- c. The noun **nox**.

Nouns with i-stems and mixed stems are indicated in the vocabulary by the ending of the genitive plural, **-ium**, printed after that of the genitive singular.



MANNER OF WEARING THE TOGA

Masculine and feminine i-stems are declined thus:

hostis, m., enemy
Base, **host-**

caedēs, f., slaughter
Base, **caed-**

		SINGULAR	TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	hostis	NOM. caedēs	-s
GEN.	hostis	GEN. caedis	-is
DAT.	hostī	DAT. caedī	-ī
ACC.	hostem	ACC. caedem	-em
ABL.	hoste	ABL. caede	-e
		PLURAL	
NOM.	hostēs	NOM. caedēs	-ēs
GEN.	hostium	GEN. caedium	-ium
DAT.	hostibus	DAT. caedibus	-ibus
ACC.	hostīs, -ēs	ACC. caedīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
ABL.	hostibus	ABL. caedibus	-ibus

The declension of mixed stems is as follows:

urbs, f., city
Base, **urb-**

gēns, f., nation, race
Base, **gent-**

		SINGULAR	TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	urbs	NOM. gēns	-s
GEN.	urbis	GEN. gentis	-is
DAT.	urbī	DAT. gentī	-ī
ACC.	urbem	ACC. gentem	-em
ABL.	urbe	ABL. gente	-e
		PLURAL	
NOM.	urbēs	NOM. gentēs	-ēs
GEN.	urbium	GEN. gentium	-ium
DAT.	urbibus	DAT. gentibus	-ibus
ACC.	urbēs, -īs	ACC. gentēs, -īs	-ēs, -īs
ABL.	urbibus	ABL. gentibus	-ibus

251.

VOCABULARY

caedēs, caedis, -ium, F., slaughter, massacre	gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation, race
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, destroy	hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy (of the state)
dēserō, -ere, dēserui, dēser- tum, desert	incendō, -ere, incendi, incēn- sum, set on fire, burn
finis, finis, -ium, M., end, limit; <i>pl.</i> , country	urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city

EXERCISES

252. 1. Galli finīs lātōs habēbant. 2. In finibus eōrum multae urbēs erant. 3. Gentēs Germānōrum cum eīs bellum ōlim gerēbant. 4. Multās urbēs et oppida Gallōrum expugnāvērunt et incendērunt. 5. Hī saepe oppida dēseruērunt quod hostīs timēbant. 6. Ā Germānīs magna caedēs facta est et multa oppida delēta sunt. 7. Sed Rōmānī in Galliam vēnērunt et Germānōs vicērunt. 8. Gallōs quoque superāvērunt et Galliam prōvinciam Rōmānam fēcērunt.

253. 1. This nation has large cities in its territories. 2. No one fears danger and no one deserts his place. 3. This road is unknown to the enemy. 4. Our soldiers made a great slaughter of the enemy and destroyed many towns. 5. This book has been a great help (for a great help) to your son.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the nominative singular of each noun in 252. (2) Indicate the stem of each verb in the sentences of 252; and state whether it is the present, perfect, or participial stem. (3) Point out a phrase in the sentences of 253 which is translated by the dative of reference. (4) Decline **finis**. (5) Decline together the words for *an exhausted enemy*. (6) Name the nine adjectives which have the genitive ending **-ius**.

LESSON XXXVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued), NEUTER *I*-STEMS:
GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSIONTHE THIRD DECLENSION, NEUTER *I*-STEMS

254. Nouns of the third declension which end in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar* are *i*-stems and are neuter in gender. They have the ablative singular ending in *-ī*, the nominative and accusative plural in *-ia*, and the genitive plural in *-ium*.

insigne , N., <i>badge, decoration</i> BASE, insign-	calcar , N., <i>spur</i> BASE, calcār-	animal , N., <i>animal</i> BASE, animāl-	
SINGULAR			TERMI- NATIONS
NOM. insigne	calcar	animal	—
GEN. insignis	calcāris	animālis	-is
DAT. insignī	calcārī	animālī	-ī
ACC. insigne	calcar	animal	—
ABL. insignī	calcārī	animālī	-ī
PLURAL			
NOM. insignia	calcāria	animālia	-ia
GEN. insignium	calcārium	animālium	-ium
DAT. insignibus	calcāribus	animālibus	-ibus
ACC. insignia	calcāria	animālia	-ia
ABL. insignibus	calcāribus	animālibus	-ibus

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

255. Nouns ending in *-tās* and *-tūs*, and most nouns ending in *-gō* and *-iō*, are feminine.

Nouns ending in *-tor* are masculine.

Nouns ending in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*, *-n*, and *-t* are neuter.

256.

VOCABULARY

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build	insigne, insignis, -ium, N., badge, decoration
animal, animālis, -ium, N., animal	legiō, legiōnis, F., legion
calcar, calcāris, -ium, N., spur	nāvis, nāvis, -ium, F., ship
certē, adv., certainly, at least	vēndō, -ere, vēndidi, vēdi- tum, sell

EXERCISES

257. 1. In hīs locīs multa animālia interfecta sunt. 2. Equus meus calcar magnopere timet. 3. Hī milites insignia habent quod fortiter in bellō pugnāvērunt. 4. Labiēnus multās nāvēs aedificāvit et oppidum mūnīvit. 5. Ūna legiō ab hostibus dēlēta est. 6. Lēgātus urbem expugnāvit et multōs servōs vēndidit. 7. Hic homō certē hostis patriae fuit, sed nōn interfectus est. 8. Ōlim multae nāvēs in flūminibus patriae nostrae vīsae sunt.

258. 1. This small animal has a large head. 2. The boy wounded the horse with the spur. 3. Many ships were built by the lieutenant and the town was fortified. 4. We saw the badges and the weapons of the Gauls. 5. The soldiers were a help (for a help) to the sailors.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline **nāvis longa**. (2) Decline **animal magnum**. (3) Give the principal parts of the verbs in sentences 6, 7, and 8, 257. (4) Point out the differences between the case endings of **corpus** and of **calcar**. (5) Conjugate **vēndō** in the past perfect active indicative. (6) Explain the case use of **hostibus** in sentence 5, 257.

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION, IRREGULAR AND EXCEPTIONAL NOUNS

DECLENSION OF *vīs*

259. A few nouns of the third declension are somewhat irregular. The noun *vīs* has a different stem in the plural from that used in the singular.

vīs, force, violence; pl., strength

BASES, *vī-*, *vir-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL
NOM.	<i>vīs</i>	<i>virēs</i>
GEN.	—	<i>virium</i>
DAT.	—	<i>viribus</i>
ACC.	<i>vim</i>	<i>virīs or virēs</i>
ABL.	<i>vī</i>	<i>viribus</i>

a. The accusative plural of *vīs* is to be distinguished from the dative and ablative plural of *vir* by the long *i* of the first syllable.

DECLENSION OF *IGNIS* AND *TURRIS*

260. There are a few *i*-stems which show variations from the declension of consonant stems in the singular as well as in the plural.

ignis, M., fire

BASE, *ign-*

turris, F., tower

BASE, *turr-*

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM. <i>ignis</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>turrēs</i>
GEN. <i>ignis</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>turrium</i>
DAT. <i>ignī</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>turribus</i>
ACC. <i>ignem</i>	<i>ignīs, -ēs</i>	<i>turrim, -em</i>	<i>turris, -ēs</i>
ABL. <i>ignī, igne</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turri, turre</i>	<i>turribus</i>

261.

VOCABULARY

bōs , ¹ bovis , M., F., ox, cow; <i>pl.</i> , cattle	neque , <i>conj.</i> , nor; neque . . . neque , neither . . . nor
ignis , ignis , -ium, M., fire	nōn numquam , <i>adv.</i> , some- times
impediō , -īre, impedivī , im- peditum , hinder	turris , turris , -ium, F., tower
mōns , montis , -ium, M., mountain	vis , <i>see</i> 259, F., force, violence; <i>pl.</i> , strength

EXERCISES

262. 1. Hostēs urbem ignī dēlēvērunt. 2. Vim hostium nōn timēbāmus neque eōs vitābāmus. 3. In eō monte turrīm altam vīdimus. 4. Gallī iter nostrōrum impedivērunt et multōs milītēs interfēcērunt. 5. Puer territus est quod bovēs in agrō vīderat. 6. Neque rēx neque frāter eius tum in urbe erat. 7. Nōn numquam nāvēs ex hāc turri videntur. 8. Lēgātus quattuor legiōnēs ad montem dūxit et ibi castra mūnīvit.

263. 1. The Gauls destroyed the tower with fire. 2. The violence of the soldiers frightened the townspeople and many fled from the town. 3. The boy had wandered in the mountains five hours. 4. We saw horses and cattle on the islands, but we saw no men. 5. Sometimes the march of the legions was hindered by the deep rivers and the forests. 6. In that city there was neither slave nor master.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Name the three classes of nouns in the third declension. (2) Give the case endings of masculine and feminine consonant stems. (3) Give the case endings of masculine and feminine *i*-stems and mixed stems. (4) Give the rules for gender in the third declension. (5) Decline together **vis magna**.

¹ The genitive, dative, and ablative of the plural of **bōs** are somewhat irregular. These forms do not occur in the exercises of this book. They may be found in the Appendix, section 3, D.

LESSON XL

ĪDEM: GENITIVE OF THE WHOLEDECLENSION OF **ĪDEM**

264. The declension of **idem**, *same*, is as follows:

SINGULAR		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. idem	eadem	idem
GEN. eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
DAT. eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC. eundem	eandem	idem
ABL. eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLURAL		
NOM. idem or eīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN. eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT. eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem
ACC. eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL. eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem

THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

265. The genitive is sometimes used to designate the whole of something of which a part is denoted by the word on which the genitive depends. This use of the genitive is called the Genitive of the Whole.

Multi nostrōrum fūgērunt, *many of our men fled*.

a. The Latin uses the genitive of the whole in certain phrases where the English employs an adjective in agreement.

Nihil novi, *nothing new (nothing of that which is new)*.

266.

VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus,	eques, equitis, m., horseman ;
be absent, be away, be distant	<i>pl.</i> , cavalry
aestās, aestātis, f., summer.	īdem, eadem, idem, same, the same
apud, prep. w. acc., among,	pars, partis, -ium, f., part
with, at the house of	vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, over-run, plunder
dux, ducis, m., leader	

EXERCISES

267. 1. Pars equitum statim fūgit et multī interfectī sunt. 2. Hī hominēs numquam amicōs dēseruērunt. 3. Apud Rōmānōs iūstitia semper laudāta est. 4. Īdem dux ad castra iterum cum eīsdem militibus veniet. 5. Silva nōn longē ab eō flūmine abest. 6. Eam aestātem in Ītaliā cum amicīs mānsī. 7. Germānī eandem partem Ītaliae anteā vexāverant. 8. Gallī turrim ignī dēlēvērunt sed oppidum nōn expugnāvērunt. 9. Nihil novī dē bellō audīvī, quod nōn in urbe fuī.

268. 1. Part of the men were absent from the town because the lieutenant feared no danger from (**ab**) the enemy. 2. We shall send the same leader and the same soldiers. 3. We remained in Italy one summer and saw many beautiful cities. 4. The Gauls overran part of Britain and destroyed many towns. 5. Among the soldiers, these arms are praised. 6. We saw the horsemen in the river and we fled.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **īdem dux**. (2) Decline together **eadem pars**. (3) Point out three examples of the use of the genitive of the whole in the sentences of 267. (4) Conjugate **absum** in the present indicative and the future indicative. (5) Give a synopsis of **fugīō** in the third person singular indicative active. (6) Explain the case of **aestātem**, in sentence 6, 267.

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

269.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aestās, -tātis, F.	alius, alia, aliud
animal, animālis, N.	alter, altera, alterum
animus, -ī, M.	armatus, -a, -um
bōs, bovis, M., F.	cārus, -a, -um
caedēs, caedis, F.	dēfessus, -a, -um
calcar, calcāris, N.	īdem, eadem, idem
captīvus, -ī, M.	incognitus, -a, -um
caput, capitis, N.	neuter, neutra, neutrum
castellum, -ī, N.	nūllus, nūlla, nūllum
corpus, corporis, N.	sōlus, sōla, sōlum
dux, ducis, M.	tōtus, tōta, tōtum
eques, equitis, M.	ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
finis, finis, M.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum
flūmen, flūminis, N.	uter, utra, utrum
frāter, frātris, M.	absūm, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus
gēns, gentis, F.	aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
homō, hominis, M.	āmittō, -ere, āmisi, āmissum
hostis, hostis, M.	condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
ignis, ignis, M.	dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
impedīmentum, -ī, N.	dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum
īnsigne, īnsignis, N.	emō, -ere, emī, ēmptum
iter, itineris, N.	excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
iūstitia, -ae, F.	faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
legiō, legiōnis, F.	fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
lēx, lēgis, F.	iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum
lūna, -ae, F.	impediō, -ire, -ivī, -itum
mīles, mīlitis, M.	incendō, -ere, incendi, incēnsūm
mōns, montis, M.	interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
nāvis, nāvis, F.	pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
nēmō, dat. nēminī, M., F.	pervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
nihil, indeclinable, N.	recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum

nūntius, -ī, M.
 pars, partis, F.
 rēgnum, -ī, N.
 rēx, rēgis, M.
 subsidium, -ī, N.
 trīdnum, -ī, N.
 turris, turris, F.
 urbs, urbis, F.
 victōria, -ae, F.
 vis, F.

vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditum
 vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 certē
 item
 iterum
 magnopere
 nōndum
 nōn numquam
 apud
 neque

270. RELATED ENGLISH
 WORDS

absent	hostile
animal	ignite
army	impede
bovine	incendiary
capital	legion
corporal	naval
desert	part
duke	turret
edifice	urban
ensign	vendor
final	vex



DRAWING ON THE OUTER WALL OF A
 HOUSE IN POMPEII

LESSON XLI

PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE OF REGULAR VERBS:
USE OF INFINITIVE

THE PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

271. The terminations of the present passive infinitive in the four conjugations are as follows.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-ārī	-ērī	-ī	-irī

The following table shows the formation and translation of the present infinitives, active and passive, of the four conjugations:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	portāre, <i>to carry</i>	portārī, <i>to be carried</i>
II.	monēre, <i>to warn</i>	monērī, <i>to be warned</i>
III.	{ dūcere, <i>to lead</i>	dūcī, <i>to be led</i>
	{ capere, <i>to take</i>	capī, <i>to be taken</i>
IV.	audire, <i>to hear</i>	audirī, <i>to be heard</i>

THE INFINITIVE AS MODIFIER OF A VERB (COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE)

272. The infinitive is frequently used in direct dependence on a verb, as an object, or as an adverbial modifier. When thus used, it may be said to complete the meaning of the verb on which it depends.

Mātūrat venīre, he hastens to come.

a. A dependent English infinitive expressing purpose in such phrases as, *We came to help you*, represents a different usage, and cannot be translated by a Latin infinitive.

273.

VOCABULARY

conveniō, -ire, convēni, con-	incipiō, -ere, incēpi, incep-
ventum, come together,	tum, begin
assemble	invitus, -a, -um, unwilling
cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitum,	possideō, -ēre, possēdi, pos-
wish, desire	sessum, possess
ferus, -a, -um, fierce	praemium, -ī, N., reward

EXERCISES

274. 1. Hic puer laudārī semper cupit. 2. Hostēs convenire nōn mātūrāvērunt quod invītī erant. 3. Eī hominēs ferī finēs lātōs possident. 4. Lēgātus mīlitēs ad castra hostium dūcī iubet. 5. Sonus armōrum audīrī incipit et oppidānī terrentur. 6. Urbs nostra longē ā monte abest. 7. Praemium eī nōn dabitur quod nōn honestus est. 8. Magna pars eius insulae Gallis incognita erat sed Rōmānī ibi multa oppida repperērunt.

275. 1. The lieutenant wishes to be sent to Gaul. 2. You do not wish to be warned because you do not see the danger. 3. This reward was given by the king to his brother. 4. The soldiers are beginning to assemble, but the leader is absent. 5. Many hastened to flee from the city, but this man remained. 6. There are many fierce animals in the forests of that island.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the present active and passive infinitives of all the verbs of the vocabulary of this lesson. (2) Explain the use of the infinitives in sentences 1 and 2, 274. (3) Explain the case of *insulae*, 8, 274. (4) Give the genitive and the dative singular of the phrase which means *the same reward*. (5) Give the accusative singular and plural of *vis*.

LESSON XLII

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: ABLATIVE OF MANNER

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

276. Some adjectives of the third declension have only one form for the three genders in the nominative singular, others have two forms, one for the masculine and feminine and one for the neuter, and others have three forms, one for each gender. They are accordingly known as adjectives of one, two, or three endings.

Those of three endings and two endings are *i*-stems. They are declined as follows:

ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

ācer, bold

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	āceres	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -īs	ācrēs, -īs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

omnis, all

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
GEN.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
DAT.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
ACC.	omnem	omne	omnēs, -īs	omnia
ABL.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

277. The manner in which an act is done may be expressed by the ablative with **cum**. But **cum** may be omitted if the noun is modified by an adjective. This use of the ablative is called the Ablative of Manner.

Cum virtūte pugnant, they fight with courage.

Cum magnā virtūte pugnant, or virtūte magnā pugnant,
they fight with great courage.

278.**VOCABULARY**

ācer, ācris, ācre, spirited,	fortis, forte, brave
bold, sharp	omnis, omne, all, every
Caesar, Caēsarīs, m., Caesar,	pedester, pedestris, pedestre,
(<i>Gaius Julius Caesar, a famous Roman general and statesman</i>)	on foot; cōpiae pedestrēs,
	infantry
celeritās, -tātis, f., speed	vīcus, -ī, m., village
	virtūs, virtūtis, f., courage

EXERCISES

279. 1. Cōpiae pedestrēs (cum) magnā celeritāte appropinquāvērunt. 2. Nūllum bellum in omnī Italiā eō annō erat. 3. Ille puer equum ācrem habet. 4. Gallī fortēs erant et bellum cum virtūte gerēbant. 5. Hostēs omnēs vīcōs incendērunt et agrōs vexāvērunt. 6. Omnēs convenīre iussī erant sed multī invītī erant. 7. Inter montem et flūmen urbs magna erat. 8. Caesar saepe virtūtem militum suōrum laudat. 9. In omnibus locīs ignēs vidēbantur et multī fugiēbant.

280. 1. The Germans attacked the city with great courage and many of them were killed. 2. Part of the village was burned by the enemy. 3. The lieutenant sent the infantry with great speed, but the horsemen had fled. 4. The danger

begins to be seen by all. 5. You demand the aid of all your friends, but you never help them.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together *miles ācer*. (2) Decline together *vir fortis*. (3) Give the genitive plural of *mōns* and *flūmen*. (4) Decline *pedester* in full. (5) Explain the case of *virtūte* in sentence 4 and of *flūmen* in sentence 7, 279. (6) Give the principal parts of the verbs *gerō* and *tubeō*.

LESSON XLIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (Continued): ORDER OF WORDS IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

281. Most third declension adjectives of one ending are *i*-stems. The ablative singular sometimes ends in *-e*.

fēlix, fortunate

potēns, powerful

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēns</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>		<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentis</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>		<i>potenti</i>	<i>potenti</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>potentem</i>	<i>potēns</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>		<i>potenti, -e</i>	<i>potenti, -e</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>		<i>potentēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>		<i>potentium</i>	<i>potentium</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>		<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlicēs, -is</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>		<i>potentēs, -is</i>	<i>potentia</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>		<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>

282. *Vetus*, *old*, is a consonant stem, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
NOM.	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>
GEN.	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
DAT.	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterēs</i>
ACC.	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetera</i>
ABL.	<i>vetere</i>	<i>vetere</i>	<i>veterum</i>
			<i>veteribus</i>
			<i>vetera</i>
			<i>veteribus</i>

ORDER OF WORDS IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

283. Phrases consisting of a monosyllabic preposition and a noun modified by an adjective sometimes have the adjective first and the preposition between the adjective and the noun.

Magnā cum virtūte, with great courage.

His dē causis, from these causes (for these reasons).

284.

VOCABULARY

<i>accipiō, -ere, accēpi, acceptum</i>	<i>fēlix, genitive fēlicis</i> ,
accept, receive	happy, fortunate
<i>centum, indecl. num., one hundred</i>	<i>pāx, pācis, f., peace</i>
<i>dē, prep. with abl., from, down from; about, concerning</i>	<i>potēns, genitive potentis</i> ,
<i>dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, owe, ought</i>	powerful
	<i>vetus, genitive veteris</i> , old;
	former, of long standing

EXERCISES

285. 1. *Nihil dē frātre tuō audīvimus.* 2. *Ille puer praeamia magna in scholā accēpit et ab amīcō tuō laudātur.* 3. *Epistulam hodiē ad eum hominem mittere dēbēmus.* 4. *Viri boni semper pācem cupiunt.* 5. *Omnēs eum propter iūstitiam et virtūtem eius laudant.* 6. *Ille rēx fēlix et potēns erat et multōs sociōs habēbat.* 7. *In eō locō eōsdem virōs saepe viderāmus.* 8. *Magnā cum celeritāte centum*

virī ex agrīs convēnērunt. 9. Hae iniūriae veterēs sunt sed tamen in animō manent.



ARCH OVER ROMAN ROAD

- 286.** 1. You (*singular*) ought to invite all your friends.
2. This powerful king had many soldiers and he waged many wars. 3. We are happy because we have received a letter today. 4. These soldiers were far distant from the battle. 5. This man is working, and we ought to help him. 6. Our old friends are now in the city.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Give the Latin equivalent for the phrase *with great speed*.
(2) Explain the use of the infinitive **mittere**, in sentence 3, **285**.
(3) Mention adjectives illustrating each of the three classes of third declension adjectives. (4) Give the ablative singular and the genitive plural of **fortis** and **vetus**. (5) Give a synopsis of **accipio** in the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, passive, indicative.

LESSON XLIV

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

THE DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

287. The relative pronoun is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE PRONOUN

288. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō quem vidēs amicus meus est, the man whom you see is my friend.

289.

VOCABULARY

causa, -ae, F., cause

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēsum, defend

mare, maris, N., sea

māter, mātris, F., mother

pater, patris, M., father

quī, quae, quod, who, which, that

resistō, -ere, restitī, (with dative), resist

tempus, temporis, N., time, occasion

EXERCISES

290. 1. Praemia lēgātō quī oppidum dēfendit dabuntur. 2. Haec urbs cuius mūrum eō tempore vidēbās magna est. 3. Pater puerī cui praemia data sunt laetus est. 4. Fēmina quam vidēs est māter huius puerī. 5. Multae erant causae eius bellī veteris. 6. Hoc mare lātum et altum est. 7. Oppidānī

militibus resistēbant ā quibus oppidum oppugnātum erat. 8. Gallī magnā cum virtūte patriam suam dēfendēbant. 9. Multī erant vicī quōs militēs incendērunt.

291. 1. The cause of the war which was being waged is unknown. 2. At that time there was peace among the Gauls. 3. The father of this king resisted the enemies who wished to destroy his city. 4. The legion which had been sent, attacked the camp with great courage. 5. You feared the violence of these soldiers, but they have defended your city.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain what is meant by "simple sentence," "complex sentence," and "compound sentence." (2) State to which of these classes each of the sentences of **291** belongs. (3) Point out the subordinate clauses of the complex sentences in **291**. (4) Name the antecedents of the relative pronouns in these complex sentences. (5) Explain the cases of the relative pronouns in **290**.

LESSON XLV

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

292. In the fourth declension the nominative ends in **-us** for the masculine and feminine and in **-ū** for the neuter. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

exercitus, M., *army*

BASE, **exercit-**

cornū, N., *horn*

BASE, **corn-**

SINGULAR

		TERMI- NATIONS			TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	exercitus	-us	NOM.	cornū	-ū
GEN.	exercitūs	-ūs	GEN.	cornūs	-ūs
DAT.	exercitui, -ū	-ui, -ū	DAT.	cornū	-ū
ACC.	exercitum	-um	ACC.	cornū	-ū
ABL.	exercitū	-ū	ABL.	cornū	-ū

PLURAL

NOM.	exercitūs	-ūs	NOM.	cornua	-ua
GEN.	exercituum	-uum	GEN.	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	exercitibus	-ibus	DAT.	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	exercitūs	-ūs	ACC.	cornua	-ua
ABL.	exercitibus	-ibus	ABL.	cornibus	-ibus

a. The dative and ablative plurals of a few masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension end in -ūbus.

293.

VOCABULARY

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,	manus, -ūs, F., hand; band
-ventum, surround	(of men)
cornū, cornūs, N., horn; wing	petō, -ere, petīvī or petiī, peti-
(of an army)	tum, beg for, seek
exercitus, -ūs, M., army, body	tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum,
of trained men	hold out
flūctus, -ūs, M., wave	vōx, vōcis, F., voice

EXERCISES

294. 1. Flūctūs maris altī erant et nāvis in periculō erat. 2. Castra in quibus exercitus est circumventa sunt. 3. Gallī ad Caesarem manūs tendēbant et pācem petēbant. 4. Vōcēs Gallōrum quās militēs audīvērunt eōs terruērunt. 5. Id cornū superātum est. 6. Exercitus quem Gallī condūxerant parvus erat. 7. Legiō quam Labiēnus in castrīs reliquit ab hostibus oppugnāta est. 8. Fēlix es quod patria tua pācem habet.

295. 1. The Germans will surround the town which the army is defending. 2. We heard the sound of the waves at that time. 3. The Gauls resisted the army of the Romans and fought bravely. 4. The enemy will hold out their hands and beg for peace. 5. You did not receive the letter which I sent.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together the words which mean *a small hand*. (2) Explain the gender and number of the relative pronouns in the sentences of 294. (3) Point out the complex sentences in 295. (4) Point out the subjects of the subordinate clauses in these complex sentences. (5) Indicate the personal endings, tense signs, and stems of the forms **tendebant** and **conduxerant**. (6) Conjugate **petō** in the future indicative active.

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

- 296.** (1) The third declension of *i*-stem nouns.
 (2) The third declension of adjectives.
 (3) The fourth declension of nouns.
 (4) The declension of *idem*.
 (5) The relative pronoun.
 (6) The present infinitive of the four conjugations.
 (7) Gender in the third declension.
 (8) The genitive of the whole.
 (9) The ablative of manner.
- 297.** Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation.

accept	fortitude	pedestrian
celerity	inception	possession
century	manual	premium
convene	marine	resist
convention	maternal	temporary
defend	omnipresent	veteran
felicity	pacify	virtue
fluctuate	paternal	vocal

LESSON XLVI

DECLENSION OF **DOMUS**: LOCATIVE CASEDECLENSION OF **DOMUS**

298. The noun **domus**, *home*, is irregular in that some of its cases have forms both of the second and of the fourth declensions.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	domus	domūs
GEN.	domūs, domī	domuum, domōrum
DAT.	domuī, domō	domibus
ACC.	domum	domōs, domūs
ABL.	domō, domū	domibus

THE LOCATIVE CASE

299. With names of towns and small islands, also with **domus**, the place where some act is done or something exists is expressed by a form called the Locative Case. This has the same form as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions; elsewhere it has the same form as the ablative: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. **Ocelī**, *at Ocelum*.

The locative of **domus** is **domī**.

a. The ablative of the noun **locus** (and occasionally of a few other nouns of similar meaning) is commonly used without a preposition to denote Place Where, if modified by an adjective: **hīs locīs**, *in these places*.

300.

VOCABULARY

clārus , -a, -um, distinguished, famous	inīquus -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust
cōscribō , -ere, cōscripsi , cōscriptum , enroll	laus , laudis, F., praise
domus , -ūs, (-ī), F., home, house	nōmen , nōminis, N., name
	Ocelum , -ī, N., Ocelum (<i>a town</i>)
	Rōma , -ae, F., Rome

EXERCISES

301. 1. Saepe nōmen huius virī audīvistī. 2. Nōn omnēs quī fortēs sunt laudem cupiunt. 3. Hic homō clārus Rōmae domicilium habēbat. 4. Cūr hae legiōnēs nōn Ocelī hiemābant? 5. Exercitus castra in locō iniquō posuit. 6. Caesar quattuor lēgiōnēs novās cōnseripsit. 7. Multōs annōs domī mānsimus. 8. Illic puer labōrat quod praemium petit. 9. Id cornū exercitūs locum dēseruit et ad montem fūgit.



ROMAN OIL VAULT

302. 1. The names of these nations are unknown to Caesar. 2. The soldiers who fought bravely in an unfavorable place received praise. 3. The son of this distinguished German is in Rome. 4. At home you (*sing.*) were often unhappy. 5. The town in which the soldier's father lives is small. 6. We do not desire war, but we shall defend our homes.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the endings of the fourth declension. (2) Decline together **flūctus altus**. (3) Decline the relative pronoun in full. (4) Give a synopsis of **cōnseribō** in the third person singular, active voice, indicative. (5) Explain the case of **Rōmae** in sentence 3, **301**.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL

The greater part of the region known as Gaul was conquered by the Romans in a series of campaigns lasting from 58 to 50 B. C. The Roman army was under the command of Gaius Julius Caesar, who was governor of the Roman province lying to the south of independent Gaul. The province had been conquered and brought under Roman authority some years earlier. The extension of Roman influence over the whole of Gaul brought about the adoption of the Latin language and of Roman customs in this important part of Europe, a result which has affected all the later history of France and of the whole civilized world.

The successes of Caesar in this war made it possible for him to become the ruler of Rome a little later, and to change the form of its government from a republic to a monarchy.

The main events of the first two years of the war are told in connection with the lessons which follow.





GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

LESSON XLVII

NUMERALS: DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

CARDINAL NUMERALS

303. The cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>one</i>	<i>ūndecim</i> ,	<i>eleven</i>
<i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i> ,	<i>two</i>	<i>duodecim</i> ,	<i>twelve</i>
<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> ,	<i>three</i>	<i>tredecim</i> ,	<i>thirteen</i>
<i>quattuor</i> ,	<i>four</i>	<i>quattuordecim</i> ,	<i>fourteen</i>
<i>quīnque</i> ,	<i>five</i>	<i>quīndecim</i> ,	<i>fifteen</i>
<i>sex</i> ,	<i>six</i>	<i>sēdecim</i> ,	<i>sixteen</i>
<i>septem</i> ,	<i>seven</i>	<i>septendecim</i> ,	<i>seventeen</i>
<i>octō</i> ,	<i>eight</i>	<i>duodēvigintī</i> ,	<i>eighteen</i>
<i>novem</i> ,	<i>nine</i>	<i>ūndēvigintī</i> ,	<i>nineteen</i>
<i>decem</i> ,	<i>ten</i>	<i>vīgintī</i> ,	<i>twenty</i>

DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

304. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
GEN.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
DAT.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
ACC.	<i>duōs</i> , <i>duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
ABL.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

a. The declension of *ūnus* has been explained in 234. With the exception of *duo* and *trēs*, the other numerals given above are not declined. The remaining numerals from twenty-one to one thousand may be found in the Appendix, section 14.

EXERCISES

315. 1. Nūntius Rōmam nōndum pervēnit. 2. Pater puellae domum veniet. 3. Puerī librōs suōs domum portāvērunt. 4. Exercitus per magnam silvam iter fēcerat.

THE HELVETIAN EMIGRATION

Helvētīi finēs lātōs et agrōs bonōs possidēbant. Finēs eōrum ducenta quadrāgintā milia passuum in longitūdinem, centum octōgintā in lātitudinem patēbant. Helvētīi nōn contentī erant quod bellum gerere semper cupiēbant et multis locīs flūmina et montēs altī ā gentibus finitimīs eōs dīvidēbant. Itaque vicōs incendērunt atque ē patriā suā excessērunt.

316. 1. The territories of the Helvetians extended many miles. 2. The sailor has not yet arrived at Rome. 3. We shall come home within ten days. 4. The army which was sent to Ocelum was small. 5. The legions marched (made a march) through the mountains for many days (177). 6. The Helvetians collected an army and resisted the friends of Orgetorix.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **Rōmam** in sentence 1, 315. (2) Decline **passus**. (3) Explain the case of **gentibus** in line 8, 315. (4) Indicate the personal endings in the last three verbs of 315. (5) Give the cardinal numerals from one to twenty. (6) Point out a phrase in 316 which expresses duration of time and one which expresses time within which, and name the Latin case required by each.



ROMAN COINS

LESSON L

CONJUGATION OF *eō*: ABLATIVE OF ROUTETHE CONJUGATION OF *eō*

317. The irregular verb *eō*, *go*, is conjugated in the present system in the indicative as follows:

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
	SINGULAR	
<i>eō</i>	<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibō</i>
<i>īs</i>	<i>ibās</i>	<i>ibis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>ibat</i>	<i>ibit</i>
	PLURAL	
<i>imus</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>ibimus</i>
<i>itis</i>	<i>ibātis</i>	<i>ibitis</i>
<i>eunt</i>	<i>ibant</i>	<i>ibunt</i>

The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem *i-*.

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	SINGULAR	
<i>iī</i>	<i>ieram</i>	<i>ierō</i>
<i>istī or iistī</i>	<i>ierās</i>	<i>ieris</i>
<i>iit or it</i>	<i>ierat</i>	<i>ierit</i>
	PLURAL	
<i>iimus</i>	<i>ierāmus</i>	<i>ierimus</i>
<i>istis or iistis</i>	<i>ierātis</i>	<i>ieritis</i>
<i>iērunť or iēre</i>	<i>ierant</i>	<i>ierint</i>

a. Occasionally forms are found in the perfect system with the stem *iv-*: *ivit*, *iverat*, etc.

b. The compounds *exeō*, *go out*, *trānseō*, *go across*, *redeō*, *return*, etc., are conjugated like *eō*.

THE ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

318. The way or route by which one goes may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Hæc viâ ibimus, *we shall go by this road.*

319.

VOCABULARY

Cassius , -i, M., Cassius, a Roman name (<i>Lucius Cassius, a Roman consul killed in battle with the Helvetians</i>)	profectiô , -ônīs, F., setting out, departure
eô , ire, ii (ivī), itum, go	proximus , -a, -um, nearest, next to
exeô , -ire, exii, exitum, go out, go forth (from), go from	sub , prep. with acc. or abl., under (takes acc. to denote place toward which motion is directed, and abl. to denote place where something exists or occurs)
iugum , -i, N., yoke; ridge (of hills or mountains)	trânseô , -ire, trānsii, trānsitum, cross
L. , abbreviation for Lūcius , a Roman first name	

EXERCISES

320. 1. Exeunt; exībant; exībunt; trānsit; trānsibit; it; ibit. 2. Omnēs eōdem itinere ibant. 3. Ex urbe cum omnibus amicis suis exiit. 4. Eō diē legiōnēs vīgintī mīlia passuum ierant.

THE HELVETIANS AND THE ROMANS

Helvētīi hostēs populī Rōmānī erant et antea exercitum Rōmānum vicerant. L. Cassium, ducem eius exercitūs, interfecerant et exercitum sub iugum miserant. Itaque profectiō eōrum periculōsa populō Rōmānō erat quod prōvincia Rōmāna proxima finibus Helvētiōrum erat.

321. 1. A Roman army had been defeated by the Helvetians. 2. Their territories were next to the Roman province. 3. Lucius Cassius had led an army into Gaul, but the Gauls

had defeated him. 4. They were crossing the river with all their forces. 5. The soldiers who had been enrolled in Italy were led into Gaul by this route.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of *trānseō* in the third person singular, of the indicative. (2) Explain the cases of *ducem* and of *finibus* in lines 6 and 9, 320. (3) Give the case endings of the fifth declension. (4) Give rules for gender in the fourth and fifth declensions. (5) Point out an example of the ablative of route in the sentences of 320. (6) Give the rule for the expression of place to which.

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

322.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

<i>causa</i> , -ae, F.	<i>fortis</i> , forte
<i>celeritās</i> , -tātis, F.	<i>iniquus</i> , -a, -um
<i>cīvitās</i> , -tātis, F.	<i>invītus</i> , -a, -um
<i>cornū</i> , -ūs, N.	<i>mille</i>
<i>diēs</i> , <i>diēi</i> , M. and F.	<i>octōgintā</i> (<i>indeclinable</i>)
<i>domus</i> , -ūs (-ī), F.	<i>omnis</i> , omne
<i>exercitus</i> , -ūs, M.	<i>pedester</i> , -tris, -tre
<i>flūctus</i> , -ūs, M.	<i>potēns</i> , <i>gen.</i> <i>potentis</i>
<i>grātia</i> , -ae, F.	<i>proximus</i> , -a, -um
<i>indiciū</i> , -ī, N.	<i>quadrāgintā</i> (<i>indeclinable</i>)
<i>iugum</i> , -ī, N.	<i>tertius</i> , -a, -um
<i>lātītūdō</i> , -dinis, F.	<i>vetus</i> , <i>gen.</i> <i>veteris</i>
<i>laus</i> , <i>laudis</i> , F.	<i>accipiō</i> , -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
<i>longitūdō</i> , -dinis, F.	<i>circumveniō</i> , -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
<i>manus</i> , -ūs, F.	<i>cōnscribō</i> , -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum
<i>mare</i> , <i>maris</i> , N.	<i>conveniō</i> , -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
<i>māter</i> , <i>mātris</i> , F.	<i>cupiō</i> , -ere, <i>cupivī</i> , <i>cupitum</i>

nōmen, nōminis, N.	dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
passus, -ūs, M.	dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēsum
pater, patris, M.	dividō, -ere, dīvisī, dīvisum
pāx, pācis, F.	ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
praemium, -ī, N.	eō, īre, iī or īvi, itum
profectiō, -ōnis, F.	exeō, -īre, -iī or -īvi, -itum
rēs, rei, F.	incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum
tempus, temporis, N.	incolō, -ere, -uī
vicus, -ī, M.	petō, -ere, -īvi, -itum
virtūs, virtūtis, F.	possideō, -ēre, possēdi, possessum
vōx, vōcis, F.	resistō, -ere, restitī
quī, quae, quod	tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum
ācer, ācris, ācre	trānseō, -īre, -iī or -īvi, -itum
centum (<i>indeclinable</i>)	quoque
clārus, -a, -um	dē
contentus, -a, -um	per
ducentī, -ae, -a	sub
fēlix, <i>gen.</i> fēlicis	atque
finitimus, -a, -um	

323.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

approximate	enunciate	longitude
city	exit	nominate
contented	iniquity	octogenarian
divide	latitude	subnormal
division	laudable	transition

LESSON LI

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS: DATIVE OF POSSESSION

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

324. Frequently with verbs compounded with **ante**, **ob**, **prae**, and **sub**, the noun or pronoun connected in sense with the preposition is put in the dative.¹

Prōvinciae praest, *he is in command of the province.*

a. The dative may also be used in the same manner with compounds of **ad** and **in** when motion is not expressed.

Bellum Gallis inferunt, *they make war on the Gauls.*

b. If the simple verb is transitive, the compound may take an accusative and a dative.

Labiēnum castris praefēcit, *he placed Labienus in command of the camp.*

c. Often the dative with a compound is merely an indirect object or a dative of reference, or is to be explained by the rule of Lesson XVI.

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

325. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative case, with the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of the verb meaning *to be*.

Puerō² gladius est, *the boy has a sword.*

¹ Other prepositions whose compounds sometimes take a dependent dative are **circum**, **con**, **inter**, **post**, **prō**, **super**.

² The exact force of the case in this construction cannot be rendered in idiomatic English.

326.

VOCABULARY

ācritēr , <i>adv.</i> , fiercely, spirit- edly	nox , noctis , - ium , <i>F.</i> , night
cōstituō , - stituere , - stitui , - stitūtum , determine, de- cide; draw up (<i>troops</i> , an <i>army</i> , etc.)	omnīnō , <i>adv.</i> , only
dicō , - ere , dixī , dictum , say	praesum , - esse , - fui , - futūrus , be in command of, be in charge of
inimicus , - a , - um , unfriendly	prohibeō , - ēre , - uī , - itum , pre- vent, restrain, keep back
	ut , <i>adv.</i> , as

EXERCISES

327. 1. Labiēnus nōn tōtī exercitui praefuit. 2. Huic hominī multī amīcī sunt. 3. In Britannīā noctēs aestāte nōn longae sunt. 4. In eō locō Gallī et Germānī ācritēr contendēbant.

CAESAR INTERFERES

Eō tempore Caesar prōvinciae praeerat. Is Helvētiōs prohibēre cōstituit quod inimīcī populō Rōmānō erant, ut ante diximus. Erat omnīnō legiō ūna in eā parte Galliae, et Helvētiīs (**325**) magnae cōpiae erant. Sociōs (*as allies*) habēbant trēs aliās gentēs quae domōs suās relinquēbant et cum Helvētiīs ē finibus suis exībant.

328. 1. Caesar had one legion. 2. A brave man is-in-command-of the town. 3. The Helvetians and their allies will not wage war long. 4. We shall go home and remain there two days. 5. The soldier who stands before the gate has a shield. 6. Labienus was-in-command-of the legions which were left in Gaul. 7. The enemy attacked the town fiercely that night.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **exercitui** in sentence 1, and **hominī** in sentence 2, **327**. (2) Conjugate **exeō** in the future indicative, and **trānseō** in the past indicative. (3) Decline **eadem nox**. (4) Conjugate **dicō** in the perfect indicative, active and passive. (5) Give a synopsis of **praesum** in the third person plural. (6) Decline **duo**.

LESSON LII

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION: ABLATIVE OF PLACE
FROM WHICH

THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

329. Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, lack, be absent*, and the like, take the Ablative of Separation, often with the prepositions **ab** or **ex**.

Haec flūmina Gallōs ā Belgīs dīvidunt, these rivers separate the Gauls from the Belgians.

THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

330. With names of towns and small islands, and with **domus**, the ablative without a preposition is used to express the idea of Place from Which. With other words a preposition (**ab, ex, or dē**) is used.

Helvētīi domō excessērunt, the Helvetians departed from home.

Helvētīi ex urbe excessērunt, the Helvetians departed from the city.

331.

VOCABULARY

facile, adv., easily

Genava, -ae, f., Geneva

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

prepare

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, extend,

pertain

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repul-

sum, drive back, repulse,

repel

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone, a river of Gaul

ventus, -ī, m., wind

EXERCISES

332. 1. Prōvincia nostra ā marī ad montēs pertinet. 2. Propter magnam vim ventī nāvēs nostrae magnō in periculō erant. 3. Tum pars exercitūs Genavae erat. 4. Lēgātus nōndum Rōmā exiit.

THE HELVETIANS REPULSED

Caesar statim milites in provinciā cōscripsit et bellum cum Helvitiis gerere paravit. Iter quō (318) exire parābant per provinciā Rōmānam erat. Flūmen Rhodanus provinciā ā finibus Helvitiōrum dīvidit sed id flūmen facile multis locis (299, a) trānsitur. His locis Caesar mūrō et fossā (130) Helvitiōs prohibuit. Tum milites Rōmānī tēla iēcērunt et hostēs reppulērunt.



ROMAN DRINKING CUPS

333. 1. Many soldiers came from Ocelum. 2. These three nations have gone forth from home. 3. The mountains which you see separate the Helvetians from the neighboring state. 4. The Gauls will go by this road because they have no other road. 5. A river separates the Belgians from the Germans. 6. Your brother and my friend were in Geneva the same summer.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Explain the case of **exercitūs** and **Genavae** in sentence 3, 332. (2) Name the simple verb from which the compound **pertineō** is derived, and give principal parts of both. (3) Mention two English words derived from **repellō** and state from which stem of the verb each is derived. (4) Explain the case of **Rōmā** in sentence 4, 332. (5) Name some prepositions whose compounds may govern the dative.

LESSON LIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

334. (1) The comparative degree of an adjective is formed by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-ior** for the masculine and feminine and with **-ius** for the neuter.

The superlative is regularly formed by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-issimus (-a, -um)**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, high	altior, altius, higher	altissimus, -a, -um, <i>highest</i>
fortis, brave	fortior, fortius, braver	fortissimus, -a, -um, <i>bravest</i>

(2) The comparatives are third declension adjectives of two endings and are declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. lātor	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN. lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT. lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC. lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, (-īs)	lātiōra
ABL. lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

a. The superlative is declined like **bonus**.

b. The comparative is often translated with the adverb *rather* or *too*, and the superlative with *very*.

Flūmen lātius erat, the river was rather wide.

Montem altissimum vidimus, we saw a very high mountain.

335.

VOCABULARY

angustus , -a, -um, narrow	impendeō , -ēre, overhang,
autem , but, however (<i>never stands first in its clause</i>)	impend
dēiciō , -ere, dēiēcī , dēiectum ,	Sēquani , -ōrum, m. pl., the
dislodge; disappoint	Sequani
Haeduus , -ī, m., a Haedian; pl., the Haeduan	spēs , speī , f., hope
	vāstō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste

EXERCISES

336. 1. Flūmen lātissimum; mōns altior; vir clārissimus; mīlitem fortissimum; iter angustius. 2. Germānī in Galliam trānsierant et agrōs Gallōrum vāstābant. 3. Itinere angustiore exiērunt. 4. Montēs altiōrēs numquam vidī.

ANOTHER ROUTE FOUND

Itaque Helvētīi dē eā spē dēiectī sunt. Sed aliud iter erat per finēs Sēquanōrum. Id angustum erat et mōns altissimus impendēbat. Sēquani autem nōn restitērunt et Helvētīi omnēs cōpiās suās hāc viā dūxērunt. Per finēs Sēquanōrum sine iniūriā iērunt et in finēs Haeduōrum pervēnērunt, quōrum agrōs vāstāvērunt.

337. 1. The Helvetians had great hopes of victory. 2. This mountain was higher and this road was narrower. 3. These boys are very brave. 4. These gifts are the most pleasing of all. 5. The most famous city of Italy was set on fire. 6. Our fields have been laid waste by our enemies and we fear their power (violence). 7. No one has kinder friends.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Compare (i. e., give the positive, comparative, and superlative of) the adjectives **angustus**, **cārus**, **benignus**, and **longus**. (2) Decline the comparative of **tūtus**. (3) Explain the case of **itinere** in sentence 3, **336**. (4) Give the genitive of the phrase **vir clārior**. (5) Decline together **diēs longior**. (6) Point out the compound sentences in **337**.

LESSON LIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued): ABLATIVE
OF COMPARISON

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

338. Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the nominative singular masculine of the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
acer	acrior, acrius	acerrimus, -a, -um

a. The comparative is formed like that of other adjectives.

339. The following adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-limus**: **facilis**, **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **humilis**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
similis	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um

a. Other adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative regularly with **-issimus**.¹

THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

340. With a comparative, if **quam**, *than*, is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made, is put in the ablative.

Ille puer fortior fratre est, *that boy is braver than his brother.*

¹ **gracilis**, *slender*, is sometimes given in this list of adjectives, but its superlative is so rare as to make it of little importance.

a. If **quam** is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared.

Ille puer fortior quam frāter est, that boy is braver than his brother.

b. If the word denoting the person or thing compared stands in any other case than the nominative or accusative, **quam** must be used.

341.

VOCABULARY

Alpēs, -ium, F. pl., the Alps	perterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -ter-
difficilis, -e, difficult	ritum, frighten thoroughly
facilis, -e, easy	quam, adv., than, how, as
intereā, adv., meanwhile,	similis, -e, like
in the meantime	ūtilis, -e, useful

EXERCISES

342. 1. Rēs difficillima; iter facillimum; ager simillimus; in locō difficillimō. 2. Is homō miserrimus omnium erat. 3. Nostrī hostēs ācerrimī superātī sunt. 4. Mihi amīcus ūtilissimus fuistī. 5. Nēmō honestior hōc homine est. 6. Nēmō honestior quam hic homō est.

THE HAEDUANS ASK AID

Haeduī quī erant amīcī et sociī populī Rōmānī statim ad Caesarem nūntiōs mīsērunt et auxilium petiērunt. Perterriti sunt, et vim hostium vix ab oppidis prohibēbant. Caesar intereā quinque legiōnēs ex aliā parte prōvinciae per Alpēs dūxerat et cum omnibus cōpiīs ad hostēs contendēbat.

343. 1. Meanwhile the fields of the Haeduans were being laid waste. 2. The road by which the Helvetians went forth was very difficult. 3. The Germans were braver than the Haeduans. 4. This man is taller than his brother. 5. This

girl is the unhappiest of all. 6. At that time flight was very easy. 7. The cart was very useful on (in) the journey.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Compare **difficilis**, **utilis**, **pulcher**, and **liber**. (2) Give the rule for expressions of place from which. (3) Give the rule for the dative of possession. (4) Give the rule for expressions of extent in space. (5) Give the present infinitives, active and passive, of **petō**, **prohibeō**, and **oppugnō**.

LESSON LV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued): ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

344. There are a few adjectives which form their comparatives and superlatives irregularly. The most important are the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF **PLŪS**

345. **Plūs** is an adjective in the plural, but in the singular it is a neuter noun. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	plūs	plūrēs or -īs	plūra
ABL.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

a. Complūrēs, *several*, is declined like the plural of **plūs** except that the neuter may have either **-ia** or **-a** in the nominative and accusative.

b. Citerior, **ulterior**, and a few other comparatives have no positive. The comparison of **superus** and **inferus** is as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
superus	superior	suprēmus <i>or</i> summus
inferus	inferior	infirmus <i>or</i> imus

THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

346. The ablative is used to express the degree or measure of difference between two objects or persons compared.

Turris duōbus pedibus altior quam mūrus est, *the tower is two feet higher than the wall (higher by two feet).*

a. A frequent use of this construction is to be seen in **multō**, the ablative of the neuter **multum**, used as a noun: **multō clārior**, *much more distinguished (more distinguished by much).*

347.

VOCABULARY

Arar , Araris , m. , the Saône, <i>a river of Gaul</i>	impetus , -ūs , m. , attack
citrā , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , on this side of	imprōvisō , <i>adv.</i> , unexpectedly
concidō , -ere , concidī , conci- sum , cut to pieces, kill	pēs , pedis , m. , foot
impeditus , -a , -um , impeded, hindered	reliquus , -a , -um , remaining, rest of; <i>m. pl. as noun</i> , the rest
	trādūcō , -dūcere , -dūxī , -duc- tum , lead across

EXERCISES

348. 1. Haec urbs multō maior eō oppidō est. 2. Ea fēmina ūnō pede altior quam filia est. 3. Gallī nōn fortiorēs Germānis erant. 4. Lēgātus reliquīs legiōnibus prae-

erat quae citrā flūmen relictæ erant. 5. Maxima pars; maior ager; minor exercitus.

THE HELVETIAN DISASTER AT THE SAÔNE

Hī tum flūmen Ararim¹ trānsibant et trēs partēs cōpiārum trādūxerant. Caesar imprōvisō impetum in eam partem fēcit quae citrā flūmen erat. Magnam partem eōrum impeditōrum concēdit. Reliquī in silvās proximās fūgērunt.



ROMAN SOLDIERS STORMING A TOWN

349. 1. The larger part remained on this side of the river. 2. The river is much wider than the ditch. 3. This route is many miles longer. 4. This school is the best but not the largest. 5. We saw a better place in the forest. 6. The Gauls made an attack unexpectedly on the legion which was crossing the river. 7. The tower is ten feet higher than the wall.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline the comparatives of **magnus** and **parvus**. (2) Point out examples of the ablative of degree of difference in 348. (3) Explain the case of **Germānis** in sentence 3, and of **legiōnibus** in sentence 4, 348. (4) Decline together **impetus ācrior** in the singular. (5) Give a synopsis of **trānsēō** and of **trādūcō** in the third person singular, active voice, in the indicative mood, giving English meanings throughout.

¹ A few i-stem proper nouns have the accusative singular in -im.

ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

350. (1) The fifth declension of nouns.
 (2) The comparison of adjectives.
 (3) The conjugation of *eo*.
 (4) Numerals.
 (5) The dative with compounds.
 (6) The dative of possession.
 (7) The accusative of extent.
 (8) The accusative of place to which.
 (9) The ablative of comparison.
 (10) The ablative of degree of difference.
 (11) The ablative of place from which.
 (12) The ablative of route.
 (13) The ablative of separation.
 (14) The locative case.

351. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

constitution	impetuous	relic
dejected	inimical	repel
dictionary	nocturnal	repulse
difficult	pedal	similar
facility	pertinent	utility
impending	prohibition	ventilation



ROMAN SPOONS AND BOWL

LESSON LVI

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION: ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

THE GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

352. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō magnae virtūtis, *a man of great courage.*

a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to express measure.

Mūrus trium pedum, *a three-foot wall (a wall of three feet).*

THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

353. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō magnā virtūte, *a man of great courage, i. e., a man with great courage.*

a. In many phrases such as the example above, either the genitive or the ablative may be used, but physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative, and measure always by the genitive.

354.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō , altitūdinis , F.,	pōns , pontis , M., bridge
height, depth	praedicō , -āre , -āvi , -ātum ,
auctōritās , -tātis , F., influence,	announce, boast
authority	respōnsum , -i , N., reply,
calamitās , -tātis , F., disaster	answer
commemorō , -āre , -āvi , -ātum ,	trānsportō , -āre , -āvi , -ātum ,
mention	convey across

EXERCISES

355. 1. Orgetorix magnā auctoritatē apud Helvētiōs fuerat. 2. Lēgātī Gallōrum hoc respōnsum dedērunt neque vim Rōmānōrum timēbant. 3. Mūrus magnā altitūdine erat. 4. Militēs iter sex diērum fēcērunt. 5. Exercitus magnī animī est quod saepe hī hostēs victī sunt.

CAESAR CROSSES THE SAÔNE

Post id proelium Caesar pontem fēcit et exercitum trādūxit. Helvētīi flūmen vīgintī diēbus trānsierant sed Caesar ūnō diē omnem exercitum trānsportāvit. Tum Helvētīi lēgātōs mīsērunt et pācem petiērunt. Lēgātī autem multa (*much*) praedicāvērunt dē virtūte suae gentis et calamitātem veterem populī Rōmānī commemorāvērunt.

356. 1. The river was of great width. 2. The soldiers were of great courage and defended the camp bravely. 3. A journey of five days was made by the army. 4. The soldier whom you see is much braver than his brother. 5. The men went by the most difficult road. 6. He is not a boy of great strength, but he works energetically. 7. You ask for peace, and this is my answer.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Mention some English words derived from the words in the vocabulary of this lesson. (2) Give the Latin adjective from which the noun *altitūdō* is derived. (3) Explain the derivation of *trānsportō*. (4) Explain the case of *altitūdine* in sentence 3, and of *diērum* in sentence, 4, 355. (5) Explain the gender of *multa*, line 9, 355. (6) Give the genitive of the phrase which means *one day*.

LESSON LVII

THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS

357. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives by the use of certain adverbial endings. Those derived from adjectives of the first and second declension regularly take *-ē* in place of the genitive ending of the adjective. Those derived from third declension adjectives regularly have *-ter* or *-iter* (*-er* only, if the genitive ending follows *-nt*), in place of the genitive ending.

lātus, wide
fortis, brave
audāx, bold
prūdēns, prudent

lātē, widely
fortiter, bravely
audācter, boldly
prūdentē, prudently

a. The neuter accusative singular of some adjectives is used as an adverb: *facile, easily*; *multum, much*.

b. The adverb of *magnus* is *magnopere*; of *bonus, bene*. Some adverbs do not have a corresponding adjective: e. g., *saepe, often*.

358.

VOCABULARY

<i>complūrēs, -a, (-ia), several,</i> some	<i>obses, obsidis, m., hostage</i>
<i>condiciō, -ōnis, f., terms,</i> condition	<i>paucī, -ae, -a (singular not</i> <i>often used), few; masculine</i> <i>as noun, a few</i>
<i>fidēs, fidei, f., confidence;</i> <i>fidem habēre, trust (with</i> <i>dative)</i>	<i>poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand</i> <i>prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessī, prō-</i> <i>cessum, advance</i>

EXERCISES

359. 1. *Helvētīi quī in finēs Haeduōrum pervēnerant agrōs lātē vāstābant.* 2. *Exercitus noster celeriter flūmen trānsiit sed hostēs fūgerant.*

MARCHING AND FIGHTING

Caesar quod eīs fidem nōn habēbat obsidēs poposcit. Hī autem eam condiōnem nōn accēpērunt neque pāx est facta. Tum Helvētīi castra mōvērunt et ex eō locō prōcessērunt. Caesar item castra mōvit et iter paucīs mīlibus passuum post eōs fēcīt. Complūrēs diēs idem factum est. Hīs diēbus equitēs Rōmānī in hostēs impetum fēcērunt sed repulsī sunt et paucī sunt interfectī.



ROMAN TEMPLE AT CORI

360. 1. The enemy fiercely made an attack on our horsemen. 2. The fields of the Haeduans, who were allies of the Romans, were laid waste widely. 3. Several men advanced toward (*ad*) Caesar. 4. These men who were killed in war certainly loved their country. 5. The hostages greatly desired to see their friends.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Form adverbs from the adjectives *altus*, *grātus*, and *honestus*. (2) Explain the derivation of *ācritēr* and *fēliciter*. (3) Explain the meaning of the phrase *bona fide*. (4) Explain the derivation of the words *transportation* and *procession*. (5) Decline *complūrēs*.

LESSON LVIII

THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

361. The comparative of an adverb is the same as the accusative singular neuter form of the comparative of the adjective from which the adverb is derived. The superlative is formed by changing the ending **-us** of the superlative of the corresponding adjective to **-ē**.

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ADJ.	<i>lātus</i>	<i>lātior</i>	<i>lātissimus</i>
ADV.	<i>lātē</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
ADJ.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācerior</i>	<i>ācerimus</i>
ADV.	<i>ācriter</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerimē</i>
ADJ.	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
ADV.	<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>

a. The following are irregular:

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
	<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
	<i>male, badly</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
	<i>magnopere, greatly</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
	<i>multum, much</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
	<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
	<i>parum, little</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
	<i>prope, near</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>
	<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
	<i>diū, long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>

b. Occasionally adverbs (and also adjectives) are compared with **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*.

362.

VOCABULARY

dēterreō, -ēre, dēterrui, dē-	princeps, principis, m., leader,
territum, hinder, prevent	chief
Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m.,	prōmittō, -ere, prōmisi, prō-
Dumnorix, <i>a Gaul</i>	missum, promise
imperium, -i, n., power, su-	satis, adv., enough
preme power, authority	summus, -a, -um, highest, su-
magis, adv., more	preme, highest part of

EXERCISES

363. 1. Belgae longissimē absunt. 2. Facilius eis persuāsit. 3. Tum ācerriimē bellum gerēbant. 4. Ea loca lātius explō-rābimus sī id cupis. 5. Nōn magnopere impetum hostium tīmēmus quod arma meliōra habēmus.

FAILURE OF SUPPLIES

Caesarī erat impedimentō (196) quod¹ exercitus eius satis frūmentī nōn habēbat. Haeduī frūmentum prōmiserant sed nōn dabant. Erant multī inter eōs quī Rōmānis inimicī erant et aliōs dēterrēbant. Prīnceps hōrum erat Dumnorix. Is amīcus Orgetorigis Helvētiī fuerat et in cīvitāte Haeduōrum summō imperiō studēbat.

364. 1. Caesar desired supreme power. 2. We have not enough grain, but we are expecting aid from Italy. 3. The enemy were more often driven back. 4. The Romans crossed very easily because they had many boats (*nāvēs*). 5. Nothing pleases the Gauls more than war. 6. This wing of the army which had made an attack, drove back the horsemen.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Compare the adverbs **fortiter** and **certē**. (2) Give the endings which are regularly used in the formation of adverbs. (3) Point out the irregularity in the formation of the adverb **male**. (4) Explain the comparison of the adverb **parum**. (5) Give the rules for the ablative of comparison and the ablative of degree of difference.

¹ Translate *that* or *the fact that*.

LESSON LIX

PRESENT PARTICIPLE: ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

365. The present active participle of a Latin verb ends in **-ns**, and is formed on the present stem. Its formation in the regular verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
portāns,	monēns,	dūcēns,	capiēns,	audiēns,
<i>carrying</i>	<i>warning</i>	<i>leading</i>	<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>

a. Like the other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension with the stem ending in **-nt**.

SINGULAR

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. portāns	portāns
GEN. portantis	portantis
DAT. portanti	portanti
ACC. portantem	portāns
ABL. portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)

PLURAL

NOM. portantēs	portantia
GEN. portantium	portantium
DAT. portantibus	portantibus
ACC. portantēs (-īs)	portantia
ABL. portantibus	portantibus

b. The present active participle is used in Latin less frequently than in English. There is no present passive participle in Latin.

THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

366. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

Miles Gallōs virtūte praecēdēbat, *the soldier surpassed the Gauls in courage.*

367.

VOCABULARY

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, summon	implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, entreat, ask, ask for, implore
condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, pardon	noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (<i>with dative</i>), injure
Dīviciācus, -ī, m., Diviciacus, <i>a Gaul</i>	praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, surpass
graviter, adv., heavily, severely	prō, prep. w. abl., for, on behalf of

EXERCISES

368. 1. Accūsāns; implōrāns; mūnientēs; iacientēs; dūcentēs. 2. Vōcēs captīvōrum auxilium implōrantium audiēbantur. 3. Puerō impigrē labōrantī favēmus. 4. Ille vir melior cōsiliō (*judgment*) est. 5. Frātre meum cōsiliō nōn praecēdis. 6. Nūlli militēs fortiōrēs animō sunt. 7. Hic homō frātrī suō nocēre cupit.

DUMNORIX CENSURED BY CAESAR

Dumnorigī (325) erat frāter nōmine¹ Dīviciācus quī amīcus populī Rōmānī erat. Is frūmentum supportāre cupiēbat sed Dumnorix maiōrem potentiam in cīvitate habēbat. Caesar hōs duōs frātrēs adhibuit atque Dumnorigem graviter accūsavit. Quod Dīviciācus prō frātre Caesarem implōrāvit, Caesar eam rem condōnāvit.

369. 1. Caesar's army surpassed the Germans in courage. 2. They are few in number, but brave in spirit. 3. The man

¹ nōmine, *by name*, is here an ablative of respect.

imploring help was heard by all. 4. The mountain overhanging is very high. 5. An arrow wounded the fleeing soldier. 6. The fire had injured the tower and the bridge.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the present active participles of **adhibeō**, **veniō**, **tendō**, and **aedificō**, with the English meanings. (2) Decline the present participles of **mūniō**, **accūsō**, and **dūcō**. (3) Explain the case of **cōnsiliō** in sentence 4, and of **animō** in sentence 6, 368. (4) Explain the case of **frātri**, in sentence 7, 368. (5) Compare the adverb **graviter** (*from the adjective gravis*).

LESSON LX

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

370. A noun or pronoun in the ablative case, together with a participle, an adjective, or another noun in agreement, may be used to refer to some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

Monte occupātō militēs exspectābant, *the mountain having been seized (after seizing the mountain), the soldiers waited.*

Nūllō prohibente iter fēcērunt, *no one preventing, they made their march.*

Helvētiis invitīs Orgetorix haec fēcit, *the Helvetians being unwilling, Orgetorix did these things.*

Labiēnō duce montem ascendērunt, *Labienus being leader, they ascended the mountain.*

a. The original force of the case may be seen if these phrases are translated with the English preposition *with*.

with the mountain seized
with no one preventing
with the Helvetians unwilling
with Labienus (as) leader

b. The participle *being*, which is often employed in translating the ablative absolute, has no equivalent in Latin.

371. Often the ablative absolute is best translated by a clause introduced by *when, after, if, since, or although*, as the sense of the main clause may suggest.

Monte occupātō, *when the mountain had been seized.*

a. Various prepositional phrases, also, may be employed in translating this ablative.

Sēquanis invitīs, *against the will of the Sequani.*
Caesare cōsule, *in the consulship of Caesar.*

372.**VOCABULARY**

ascendō , -ere, ascendī , ascēsum , ascend	explōrātōr , -tōris, M., scout
cognōscō , -ere, cognōvī , cognitum , find out; <i>perf.</i> , know	lūx , lūcis , F., light; prima lūx , daybreak
dēcertō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight to a finish; proeliō dēcertāre , fight a decisive battle	praemittō , -ere, praemisi , praemissum , send ahead
	teneō , -ēre, -uī, hold
	Cōnsidius , -ī, M., Considius, <i>an officer in Caesar's army</i>

EXERCISES

373. 1. **Legiōne cōscriptā**, Caesar bellum gerere parābat.
 2. Duce interfectō, militēs repulsī sunt. 3. His rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs in eō locō mānsērunt.

CAESAR PLANS AN ATTACK

Eōdem diē **Helvētīi** sub monte castra posuērunt octō mīliā passuum ā castris Rōmānōrum. Hāc rē cognitā, Caesar quī proeliō dēcertāre cupiēbat Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus montem ascendere iussit. Primā lūce summus mōns¹ ā Labiēnō tenēbātur et Caesar cum cōpiīs suis nōn longē aberat.

¹*The mountain top.*

Tum Caesar hominem nōmine Cōnsidium cum explōrātōribus praemīsit. Is multōs annōs in exercitū fuerat atque Caesar eī fidem habēbat.

374. 1. After Considius had been sent ahead (*abl. abs.*) Caesar advanced at daybreak. 2. With Caesar as leader the soldiers fought bravely. 3. When the king had been killed the army fled. 4. If the legion is defeated the town will be captured. 5. The Germans do not surpass us in courage. 6. When this was known scouts were sent ahead.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Translate the examples of the ablative absolute in 373 literally, then suggest clauses which are equivalent to these phrases. (2) State which of the original uses of the ablative (33) is seen in the ablative absolute. (3) Give English phrases which are equivalent to the subordinate clauses of the sentences of 374 in the form (literal equivalents) of the ablative absolute. (4) Give the present active participles of *ascendō* and *teneō*.

TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON

375.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

altitūdō, -dinis, F.	respōnsum, -ī, N.	ūtilis, -e
auctōritās, -tātis, F.	ventus, -ī, M.	ācritēr
calamitās, -tātis, F.	angustus, -a, -um	facile
condiciō, -ōnis, F.	complūrēs, -a or -ia	graviter
explōrātor, -tōris, M.	difficilis, -e	imprōvisō
fidēs, -eī, F.	facilis, -e	intereā
imperium, -ī, N.	impeditus, -a, -um	quam
impetus, -ūs, M.	inimicus, -a, -um	satis
lūx, lūcis, F.	paucī, -ae, -a	ut
nox, noctis, F.	reliquus, -a, -um	citrā
pōns, pontis, M.	similis, -e	prō
prīnceps, prīncipis, M.	summus, -a, -um	autem

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēsum
 cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum
 commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 concidō, -ere, concidī, concisum
 condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum
 dēcertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectum
 dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum
 impendeō, -ēre
 noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 pertineō, -ēre, -uī
 poscō, -ere, poposci
 praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
 praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus
 prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
 prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum
 teneō, -ēre, -uī
 trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
 trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

altitude	deter	proceed
ascend	fidelity	procession
ascension	imperial	pro-slavery
calamity	implore	response
commemorate	lucid	tenant
condone	principal	transportation

LESSON LXI

THE CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

376. The verb **possum** is a compound of the verb **sum** and the adjective **potis**, *able*. The present system in the indicative mood is as follows:

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
possum, <i>I am able or I can</i>	possumus, <i>we are able, etc.</i>
potes, <i>you are able, you can</i>	potestis, <i>you are able, etc.</i>
potest, <i>he is able, he can</i>	possunt, <i>they are able, etc.</i>

PAST

SINGULAR	PLURAL
poteram, <i>I was able, I could</i>	poterāmus, <i>we were able, etc.</i>
poterās, <i>you were able, etc.</i>	poterātis, <i>you were able, etc.</i>
poterat, <i>he was able, etc.</i>	poterant, <i>they were able, etc.</i>

FUTURE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
poterō, <i>I shall be able</i>	poterimus, <i>we shall be able</i>
poteris, <i>you will be able</i>	poteritis, <i>you will be able</i>
poterit, <i>he will be able</i>	poterunt, <i>they will be able</i>

377.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, F., line of battle	metus, -ūs, M., fear
collis, collis, M., hill	possum, posse, potuī, be able, can
cōspiciō, -ere, cōspexī, cōspectum, catch sight of, see	redeō, ¹ -ire, -iī, -itum, return
instruō, -ere, instrūxī, instrūctum, draw up, arrange	subducō, -ere, subdūxī, subductum, withdraw

EXERCISES

378. 1. Militēs quōs dūcis oppidum capere possunt. 2. Eum vidēre poteram quod in colle erat. 3. In patriam suam redire poterit. 4. Mē audire potes. 5. Mōns ex hāc urbe cōspici potest. 6. Propter metum silvās nōn explorāvī.

¹ A compound of **eō**.

THE BLUNDER OF CONSIDIUS

Cōnsidius, hominibus in summō monte cōspectis, perterritus est. Eōs Rōmānōs esse nōn cognōvit et ad Caesarem magnā celeritāte rediit. Caesar impetum timēns suōs in collem proximum subdūxit. Acīē instrūctā Helvētiōs exspectābat. Hominēs autem quōs Cōnsidius viderat militēs Caesaris erant quī montem cum Labiēnō ascenderant.

379. 1. After drawing up the line of battle (*abl. abs.*) Labienus will wait for Caesar. 2. The legions can repulse the enemy. 3. Our friends could not help us. 4. Grain cannot be sent. 5. The enemy having been repulsed, we can advance. 6. You can see the statue which stands on a hill.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the use of the ablatives **celeritāte**, line 7, and **aciē**, line 8, **378**. (2) Conjugate **redeō** in the past and future tenses of the indicative active. (3) Give a synopsis of **instruō** in the third person singular, active and passive. (4) Decline **collis**. (5) Decline the phrase **aciēs longa** in the singular. (6) Explain the derivation of **subducō**.



THE CAPITOLINE HILL (RESTORATION)

LESSON LXII

PERSONAL PRONOUNS: OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

380. As has been seen, the personal pronouns as subjects may, if not emphatic, be indicated by the endings of the verb. The nominative forms are used, however, when they are needed for emphasis or contrast.

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	ego	nōs		tū	vōs
GEN.	meī	nostrum, nostrī		tuī	vestrum, vestrī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs		tibi	vōbīs
ACC.	mē	nōs		tē	vōs
ABL.	mē	nōbīs		tē	vōbīs

a. As a pronoun of the third person, the forms of **is** are commonly employed.

THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

381. Certain nouns and adjectives which express action or feeling sometimes take a dependent genitive in a relation similar to that of the direct object to the verb on which it depends. This is called the Objective Genitive.

Amor patriae, *love of country*.

a. The forms **meī**, **tuī**, **nostrī**, **vestrī**, are used as objective genitives and seldom in any other way. Possession is expressed in the first and second persons by the possessive adjectives **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, **vester**, as explained in 80.

b. The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as genitives of the whole.

382.

VOCABULARY

āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversum,	ego, mei, I
turn away	laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum,
Bibracte, -tis, n., Bibracte, <i>a</i>	harass, attack
<i>town of the Haeduans</i>	posterus, -a, -um, following,
convertō, -ere, convertī, con-	the following, next
versum, turn, change; signa	renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
convertere, wheel about	bring back word, report
dēnique, adv., finally	tū, tui, you

EXERCISES

383. 1. Ego in urbe, tū in oppidō habitās. 2. Apud Germanōs est metus tui. 3. Frāter meus mihi hunc gladium dedit. 4. Vōs semper amāvimus. 5. Ā mē laudātus es. 6. Exercitus eō diē Genavam pervenīre nōn poterat.

CAESAR CHANGES HIS COURSE

Dēnique Labiēnus et legiōnēs ab explōrātōribus vīsi sunt. Celeriter Caesarī renūntiātum est. Sed Helvētiī castra mōverant neque proelium factum est. Posterō diē Caesar iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit et Bibracte ire contendit quod erat in eō oppidō cōpia frūmentī. Tum Helvētiī itinere conversō exercitum Rōmānum laccessivērunt.

384. 1. Fear of you (*sing.*) did not hinder the enemy. 2. We have no hope of peace. 3. I gave you the book which you have. 4. I shall not go to Rome against your will (*abl. abs.,* you unwilling). 5. They were defended by us. 6. I cannot see you, but I hear your voice.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the reason for the use of the personal pronouns in sentence 1, **383**. (2) Point out an example of the use of the objective genitive in **383**. (3) Point out two phrases in **384** which will be translated by the objective genitive. (4) Give a synopsis of **redeō** in the third person, singular and plural, active voice. (5) Conjugate **possum** in the present tense.

LESSON LXIII

REFLEXIVES: **CUM** AS ENCLITIC

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

385. The reflexive pronoun is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative to refer back to the subject.

Nōn mē laudō, *I do not praise myself.*

Tibi placēs, *you please yourself.*

Sē defendit, *he defends himself.*

a. The reflexive must be distinguished from the intensive **ipse**, which merely emphasizes the word with which it agrees. The reflexive denotes the same person or thing as the subject, but its case depends on some other element of the sentence.

Vir ipse amicum accūsāt (intensive), *the man himself accuses his friend.*

Vir sē accūsāt (reflexive), *the man accuses himself.*

386. In the first and second persons the forms of **ego** and **tū** (excluding, of course, the nominative) serve as reflexives. In the third person there is a reflexive pronoun which has no other uses. It is translated *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves*, as the gender and number of the subject may require.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
GEN.	sui	sui
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
ABL.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

THE ENCLITIC USE OF **CUM**

387. With the ablatives **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nōbis**, **vōbis**, and regularly **quibus**, the preposition **cum** is used as an enclitic. That is, it is added to the word as a final syllable.

mēcum, *with me.* **tēcum**, *with you, etc.*

388.

VOCABULARY

collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	medius, -a, -um, the middle place, station of, middle
comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	proximē, adv. (<i>superlative of prope</i>), last prepare
equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry (<i>a collective noun</i>)	sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves
interim, adv., meanwhile	veterānus, -a, -um, veteran

EXERCISES

389. 1. Cūr nōn tē in hīs periculīs dēfendis? 2. Ego mē laudō, tū nōn mē laudās. 3. Equitātū praemissō lēgātus cum paucīs militibus in colle manēbat. 4. Sē fortiter dēfendit. 5. Sibi semper fāvit, sed aliōs amīcōs habet nullōs. 6. Cūr nōn mēcum manēbis? 7. Militēs sē dēfendunt.

PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE

Caesar iterum aciem instrūxit et omnia comparāvit ad proelium. Equitātus interim cum hostibus contendēbat. Quattuor legiōnēs veterānās Caesar in colle mediō collocāvit. Eae legiōnēs quās proximē cōscripserat in summō iugō instrūctae sunt. Omnia impedimenta ad eundem locum missa erant.

390. 1. This legion will defend itself with great courage. 2. The boy wounded himself with the sword. 3. The man who is lazy injures himself. 4. Why do you not remain with me in the city? 5. The veteran soldiers had been stationed half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill). 6. When everything (all things) had been prepared (*abs. abl.*), I ordered the soldiers to make an attack.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of the reflexive pronouns in sentences 4, 5, and 7, 389. (2) Point out the reflexive pronouns in sentences 1 and 2, 389. (3) Explain the case of *equitātū* and of *militibus* in sentence 3, 389. (4) Decline the phrase *legiō veterāna*. (5) Give the third person plural of *possum* in the present, past, and future.

LESSON LXIV

PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE INFINITIVES OF
REGULAR VERBS

THE INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

391. The Latin infinitive has three tenses, the present, the past, and the future. The infinitives of the four conjugations are formed as follows:

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	
PRES. <i>portāre, to carry</i>	<i>portārī, to be carried</i>
PAST <i>portāvisse,</i> <i>to have carried</i>	<i>portātus esse,</i> <i>to have been carried</i>
FUT. <i>portātūrus esse,</i> <i>to be about to carry</i>	<i>portātum irī,</i> <i>to be about to be carried</i>
II.	
PRES. <i>monēre</i>	<i>monērī</i>
PAST <i>monuisse</i>	<i>monitus esse</i>
FUT. <i>monitūrus esse</i>	<i>monitum irī</i>
III.	
PRES. <i>dūcere</i>	<i>dūcī</i>
PAST <i>dūxisse</i>	<i>ductus esse</i>
FUT. <i>ductūrus esse</i>	<i>ductum irī</i>
PRES. <i>capere</i>	<i>capī</i>
PAST <i>cēpisse</i>	<i>captus esse</i>
FUT. <i>captūrus esse</i>	<i>captum irī</i>
IV.	
PRES. <i>audire</i>	<i>audīrī</i>
PAST <i>audīvisse</i>	<i>audītus esse</i>
FUT. <i>audītūrus esse</i>	<i>audītum irī</i>

FORMATION OF THE INFINITIVES

392. (1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the present passive infinitive is formed by changing the final **e** of the present active infinitive to **i**. In the third conjugation the termination **-ere** is replaced by **i**.

(2) The past active infinitive is formed with the termination **-isse**, which is added to the perfect stem.

(3) The past passive participle, which is used in forming the past passive infinitive, and the future active participle, which is used in forming the future active infinitive, agree in gender, number, and case with the subject.

(4) The ending **-um** is always retained with the future passive infinitive. The form used in this infinitive is not a participle.¹ The future passive infinitive is not much used.

EXERCISES

393. 1. Comparāri; comparāvisse; comparātus esse. 2. Auditūrus esse; audivisse; audiri. 3. Iēcisse; dēfēdisse; mūnivisse. 4. Mitti; mīsisse; missus esse. 5. Terrēri; territūrus esse; terruisse. 6. Trādūci; trādūxisse; trāductūrus esse. 7. Vāstāri; timēri; peti; interfici; mūniri. 8. Iūvisse; reliquisse; fūgisse. 9. Ductūrus esse; ductum iri; ductus esse. 10. Vincī; victus esse; victum iri.

394. 1. To defend; to be defended; to have defended. 2. To hinder; to be hindered; to have been hindered. 3. To have begun; to have fortified; to have left. 4. To be sent; to have been sent; to be about to send. 5. To be conquered; to have conquered; to have been conquered. 6. To be increased; to have increased; to have persuaded.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the stems of the infinitives in **393**. (2) Point out the difference between the future active infinitive and the past passive infinitive. (3) Decline the personal pronouns of the first and second persons. (4) Decline the reflexive pronoun of the third person.

¹ It is called the supine. The forms of the supine will be given later (**547**).

LESSON LXV

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE: INFINITIVES OF
SUM AND EŌ

THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

395. Verbs of *knowing, thinking, saying, hearing, and observing* may take a dependent infinitive with its subject in the accusative case. The infinitive when thus used is regularly translated by an English indicative introduced by *that*.

a. The infinitive in this use will be present, past, or future according as the time to which it refers is present, past, or future, from the point of view of the verb on which it depends.

Hostēs fugere videō, I see that the enemy are fleeing.

Hostēs fugere vidēbam, I saw that the enemy were fleeing.

Hostēs fūgisse videō, I see that the enemy have fled.

Hostēs fūgisse vidēbam, I saw that the enemy had fled.

Puer dicit frātre[m] ventūrum esse, the boy says that his brother will come.

Puer dixit frātre[m] ventūrum esse, the boy said that his brother would come.

396.

THE INFINITIVES OF SUM AND EŌ

PRES. esse	īre
PAST fuisse	īsse (iisse)
FUT. futūrus esse or fore	itūrus esse

a. The predicate noun or adjective with the infinitive of **sum** is in the accusative if the subject is in the accusative.

Tē fortem esse videō, I see that you are brave.

397.

VOCABULARY

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum,	deinde, adv., thereupon, then
yield, retreat	perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
circiter, adv., about	throw into disorder
committō, -ere, commisi, com-	pilum, -i, n., javelin
missum, unite; do; proe-	succēdō, -ere, successī, suc-
lium committere, begin	cessum, advance, come
battle	up to

EXERCISES

398. 1. Puerum labōrāre vīdī. 2. Cognōvī iter longum esse. 3. Explōrātōrēs renūtiāvērunt montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. 4. Dōnum missum esse repperistī. 5. Legiōnēs proelium comunīsisse lēgātus vidēbat. 6. Caesar dixit Helvētiōs fortēs esse. 7. Hī hominēs dicunt sē in Italiā duōs annōs fuisse.

THE HELVETIANS REPULSED

Helvētīi sub collem successērunt atque proelium est commissum. Milītēs Rōmānī pīlis celeriter hostēs perturbāvērunt, deinde gladiūs impetum in eōs fēcērunt. Multīs vulnerātīs (**370**), Helvētiōs reppulērunt, quī ad montem sē recēpērunt (*withdrew*). Is mōns circiter mille passūs aberat.

399. 1. We see that the boys are walking. 2. The soldier knows that the danger is great. 3. The leader hears that the enemy are fleeing. 4. You found out that the book had been sent. 5. The scout reported that the town had been captured. 6. The man said that the island was large. 7. Caesar heard that the Germans had crossed the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give all the infinitives of **committō** and **perturbō**. (2) Explain the case of **longum** in sentence 2, **398**. (3) Give a synopsis of **cēdō** in the third person plural, active voice, indicative mood. (4) Give the principal parts of **repellō** and **recipiō**. (5) Give the present participles of the verbs in this lesson.



THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORATION)

FORMATION OF THE INFINITIVES

392. (1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the present passive infinitive is formed by changing the final **e** of the present active infinitive to **i**. In the third conjugation the termination **-ere** is replaced by **i**.

(2) The past active infinitive is formed with the termination **-isse**, which is added to the perfect stem.

(3) The past passive participle, which is used in forming the past passive infinitive, and the future active participle, which is used in forming the future active infinitive, agree in gender, number, and case with the subject.

(4) The ending **-um** is always retained with the future passive infinitive. The form used in this infinitive is not a participle.¹ The future passive infinitive is not much used.

EXERCISES

393. 1. Comparāri; comparāvisse; comparātus esse. 2. Auditūrus esse; audivisse; audiri. 3. Iēcisse; dēfendisse; mūnīvisse. 4. Mitti; mīsisse; missus esse. 5. Terrēri; territūrus esse; terruisse. 6. Trādūcī; trādūxisse; trāduc-tūrus esse. 7. Vāstāri; timēri; peti; interfici; mūniri. 8. Iūvisse; reliquisse; fūgisse. 9. Ductūrus esse; ductum iri; ductus esse. 10. Vinci; victus esse; victum iri.

394. 1. To defend; to be defended; to have defended. 2. To hinder; to be hindered; to have been hindered. 3. To have begun; to have fortified; to have left. 4. To be sent; to have been sent; to be about to send. 5. To be conquered; to have conquered; to have been conquered. 6. To be increased; to have increased; to have persuaded.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the stems of the infinitives in **393**. (2) Point out the difference between the future active infinitive and the past passive infinitive. (3) Decline the personal pronouns of the first and second persons. (4) Decline the reflexive pronoun of the third person.

¹ It is called the supine. The forms of the supine will be given later (547).

LESSON LXV

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE: INFINITIVES OF
SUM AND EŌ

THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

395. Verbs of *knowing, thinking, saying, hearing, and observing* may take a dependent infinitive with its subject in the accusative case. The infinitive when thus used is regularly translated by an English indicative introduced by *that*.

a. The infinitive in this use will be present, past, or future according as the time to which it refers is present, past, or future, from the point of view of the verb on which it depends.

Hostēs fugere videō, *I see that the enemy are fleeing.*

Hostēs fugere vidēbam, *I saw that the enemy were fleeing.*

Hostēs fūgissee videō, *I see that the enemy have fled.*

Hostēs fūgissee vidēbam, *I saw that the enemy had fled.*

Puer dicit frātreē ventūrum esse, *the boy says that his brother will come.*

Puer dixit frātreē ventūrum esse, *the boy said that his brother would come.*

396.

THE INFINITIVES OF SUM AND EŌ

PRES. esse	īre
PAST fuisse	isse (iisse)
FUT. futūrus esse or fore	itūrus esse

a. The predicate noun or adjective with the infinitive of **sum** is in the accusative if the subject is in the accusative.

Tē fortem esse videō, *I see that you are brave.*

397.

VOCABULARY

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum,	deinde, adv., thereupon, then
yield, retreat	perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
circiter, adv., about	throw into disorder
committō, -ere, commisi, com-	pilum, -i, N., javelin
missum, unite; do; proe-	succēdō, -ere, successī, suc-
lium committere, begin	cessum, advance, come
battle	up to

EXERCISES

398. 1. Puerum labōrāre vīdī. 2. Cognōvī iter longum esse. 3. Explōrātōrēs renūntiāvērunt montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. 4. Dōnum missum esse repperistī. 5. Legiōnēs proelium commīsisse lēgātus vidēbat. 6. Caesar dixit Helvētiōs fortēs esse. 7. Hī hominēs dicunt sē in Italiā duōs annōs fuisse.

THE HELVETIANS REPULSED

Helvētīi sub collem successērunt atque proelium est commissum. Militēs Rōmānī pilis celeriter hostēs perturbāverunt, deinde gladiis impetum in eōs fecērunt. Multis vulnerātis (**370**), Helvētiōs reppulērunt, quī ad montem sē recēpērunt (*withdrew*). Is mōns circiter mille passūs aberat.

399. 1. We see that the boys are walking. 2. The soldier knows that the danger is great. 3. The leader hears that the enemy are fleeing. 4. You found out that the book had been sent. 5. The scout reported that the town had been captured. 6. The man said that the island was large. 7. Caesar heard that the Germans had crossed the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give all the infinitives of **committō** and **perturbō**. (2) Explain the case of **longum** in sentence 2, **398**. (3) Give a synopsis of **cēdō** in the third person plural, active voice, indicative mood. (4) Give the principal parts of **repellō** and **recipiō**. (5) Give the present participles of the verbs in this lesson.



THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORATION)

EXERCISES

404. 1. Amīcōs tuōs amā. 2. Illōs hominēs statim monē. 3. Breve tempus in eō vīcō manē. 4. Librum, puer, mihi dā. 5. Prōcēdite, mīlitēs, et proelium committite. 6. Castra, mīlitēs, mūnīte. 7. Vīta eius hominis brevis fuit. 8. Gallī intellēxērunt potentiam populī Rōmānī magnam esse.

AN UNSUCCESSFUL RALLY

Intereā Bōiī et Tulingī, sociī Helvētiōrum quī advēnerant, impetum in Rōmānōs ā lateribus fēcērunt. Hōc cognitō Helvētīi signa convertērunt et proelium redintegrāvērunt. Gallī ācriter pugnāvērunt sed dēnique repulsī ad montem et in castra sua sē recēpērunt. In eō locō ad multam noctem sē dēfendērunt. Multīs interfectīs Rōmānī castra et impedīmenta cēpērunt.

405. 1. Soldiers, fight bravely. 2. Boy, warn your brother. 3. Hear me, friends. 4. We know that the army is large. 5. The boy says that no one came. 6. That war was short, but many were killed. 7. I know that the river is wide and deep.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the present active imperatives of the verbs in the vocabulary of this lesson. (2) Point out the difference between the active imperatives of **monēō** and **mittō** in the singular. (3) Give the plural of the present imperatives of **dicō**, **dūcō**, and **faciō** in the active. (4) Give the passive imperatives of these verbs. (5) Compare the adjective **brevis**, and decline its comparative.

LESSON LXVII

THE CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*

406. The verb *ferō*, *bear, carry*, is irregular. Its principal parts are *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*.

PRESENT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

a. The past and future are like those of *dūcō*.

PAST		FUTURE	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>
<i>ferēbās,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>ferēbāris, -re,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>ferēs,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>ferēris, -re</i> <i>etc.</i>

b. The perfect system is formed regularly with the stem *tul-* in the active, and with the participle *lātus* in the passive.

Infinitives

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. <i>ferre</i>	<i>ferri</i>
PAST <i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus esse</i>
FUT. <i>lāturus esse</i>	<i>lātum iri</i>

Imperatives

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>fer</i>	<i>ferte</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferimini</i>

407.

VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M., F., citizen	inferō, inferre, intulī, in-
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī,	lātum, bring upon, cause
conlātum, collect, bring	opus, operis, N., work, labor
together	pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, perish
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear,	restituō, -ere, restitui, resti-
carry, bring	tūtum, restore

EXERCISES

408. 1. Fert; ferēbat; feret. 2. Cōnfert; cōnfers; cōnferēbam. 3. Rōmānī bellum Gallīs¹ inferunt. 4. Militēs in ūnum locum impedimenta cōnferēbant. 5. Bellum multa pericula fert. 6. Eō tempore multī civēs periērunt et multī aliī ex urbe fūgērunt. 7. Opus quod facis magnum est.

THE TERMS OF PEACE

Hōc proeliō factō, Gallī lēgātōs (*envoys*) mīsērunt et pācem petiērunt. Caesar arma et obsidēs poposcit. His trāditīs, Helvētiū domum redīre atque oppida et vicōs restituere iussī sunt. Bōiī autem in finibus Haeduōrum mānsērunt quod Haeduī eīs amīci erant.

409. 1. The Helvetians are collecting the arms. 2. This nation will make war on the Germans. 3. They could not bring aid. 4. Caesar says that the Gauls surrendered their arms. 5. Restore your towns and villages. 6. Caesar praised the work of the soldiers. 7. A great many (*complūrēs*) citizens assembled because they wished to see the leader of the army.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **cōnferō** and **inferō** in the present indicative active, and the future indicative active. (2) Decline **cīvis** and **opus**, and state what is the class of stems to which each belongs. (3) Give the present imperatives of **restituō**, active and passive. (4) Give the past infinitives, active and passive, of **restituō**. (5) Conjugate **pereō** in the past indicative and the future indicative. (6) Give all the infinitives of **inferō**.

¹ The phrase **bellum inferre**, *make war on*, takes a dative (324).

LESSON LXVIII

SYNOPSIS OF *POSSUM* AND *FERŌ*

410. The synopsis of **possum** and of **ferō** (active) in the first person of the indicative is as follows:

PRES.	possum	ferō
PAST	poteram	ferēbam
FUT.	poterō	feram
PERF.	potuī	tulī
P. PERF.	potueram	tuleram
F. PERF.	potuerō	tulerō

The infinitives of **possum** are:

PRES. **posse**, *to be able* PAST **potuisse**, *to have been able*

- This verb has no future infinitive.
- In irregular verbs, as in all others, the past infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem.
- The participles of **ferō** are as follows:

PRES.	ferēns
PAST	lātus
FUT. ACT.	lātūrus



ROMAN COIN

Possum has no participles.

411. VOCABULARY

Ariovistus , -ī, m., Ariovistus, <i>a German king</i>	factiō , factiōnis , f., faction, party
Arvernī , -ōrum, m. pl., the Arverni, <i>a Gallic tribe</i>	ingēns , <i>gen.</i> , ingentis , huge, very large, very great
cliēns , clientis , clientium , m., dependent	principātus , -ūs, m., leader- ship
contrā , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , against, opposite	tegō , -ere, tēxī , tēctum , cover, protect

PERFECT

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum
-------------	----------------

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram
--------------	-----------------

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō
-------------	----------------

Imperatives

SING. cōnāre	pollicēre
PLUR. cōnāminī	pollicēminī

Infinitives

PRES. cōnārī	pollicērī
PAST cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse
FUT. cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse

Participles

PRES. cōnāns	pollicēns
PAST cōnātus, -a, -um	pollicitus, -a, -um
FUT. cōnātūrus, -a, -um	pollicitūrus, -a, -um

c. Deponents have the following active forms: the present and future participles, and the future infinitive. They have also the future passive participle, used with passive meaning. The past participle is usually active in meaning, like the other forms: **cōnātus**, *having tried*. Occasionally, however, it is used with passive meaning.

415.

VOCABULARY

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try	postea, <i>adv.</i> , afterwards
multitūdō, multitūdinis, <i>F.</i> , multitude, great number	senātus, -ūs, <i>M.</i> , senate
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise	supplicium, -ī, <i>N.</i> , punishment
	vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, fear, be afraid of

LESSON LXIX

DEPONENT VERBS

414. A deponent verb is one which is passive in form but active in meaning. Its principal parts are passive forms. Deponents have only two stems, the present and the participial.

a. The endings of the present infinitives which are used to indicate the conjugations are therefore as follows:

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-ārī	-ērī	-ī	-īrī

b. Deponents of the first and second conjugations are conjugated as follows:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, try.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
cōnor	cōnāmur	polliceor	pollicēmur
cōnāris, -re	cōnāminī	pollicēris, -re	pollicēminī
cōnātur	cōnantur	pollicētur	pollicentur

PAST

cōnābar	cōnābāmur	pollicēbar	pollicēbāmur
cōnābāris, -re	cōnābāminī	pollicēbāris, -re	pollicēbāminī
cōnābātur	cōnābantur	pollicēbātur	pollicēbantur

FUTURE

cōnābor	cōnābimur	pollicēbor	pollicēbimur
cōnāberis, -re	cōnābiminī	pollicēberis, -re	pollicēbiminī
cōnābitur	cōnābuntur	pollicēbitur	pollicēbuntur

LESSON LXX

DEPONENT VERBS (Continued): ABLATIVE WITH *ŪTOR*, ETC.

DEPONENT VERBS (Continued)

418. Dependent verbs of the third conjugation ending in -or and those of the fourth conjugation are conjugated as follows:

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
potior, potīri, potītus sum, get possession of

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sequor	sequimur	potior	potimur
sequeris, -re	sequimini	potiris, -re	potimini
sequitur	sequuntur	potitur	potiuntur

PAST

sequēbar	sequēbāmur	potiēbar	potiēbāmur
sequēbāris, -re	sequēbāminī	potiēbāris, -re	potiēbāminī
sequēbātur	sequēbantur	potiēbātur	potiēbantur

FUTURE

sequar	sequēmur	potiar	potiēmur
sequēris, -re	sequēminī	potiēris	potiēminī
sequētur	sequentur	potiētur	potientur

PERFECT

secūtus sum	potītus sum
-------------	-------------

PAST PERFECT

secūtus eram	potītus eram
--------------	--------------

FUTURE PERFECT

secūtus erō

potītus erō

Imperatives

SING. sequere

potīre

PLUR. sequimini

potīmini

Infinitives

PRES. sequī

potīri

PAST secūtus esse

potītus esse

FUT. secūtūrus esse

potītūrus esse

Participles

PRES. sequēns

potiēns

PAST secūtus

potītus

FUT. secūtūrus

potītūrus

THE ABLATIVE WITH ŪTOR, FRUOR, ETC.

419. The deponents **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative case.

Gladiō ūtitur, *he uses a sword.*

Oppidō potīti sunt, *they have gained possession of the town.*

420.

VOCABULARY

dēcēdō, -ere, dēcēssī, dēces-	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,
sum, withdraw	follow
etiam, <i>adv.</i> , also, even	sōlum, <i>adv.</i> , only
existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sus-
think	tentum, endure, hold out
potior, -iri, potītus sum, get	ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, use
possession of	

EXERCISES

421. 1. Hostēs exercitum nostrum sequēbantur. 2. Diūtius sequī nōn potest. 3. Cōsidiūs explōrātōribus nōn ūsus est. 4. Nostrī castrīs et impedimentīs hostium potītī sunt. 5. Explōrātōrēs secūtus ad ingentem montem pervēnit. 6. Ūsus; secūtus; ūtī; potīrī; sequī; sequere.

THE CONDITION OF THE SEQUANI

Nōn solum Haeduī sed etiam Sēquanī auxilium ā Caesare implōrābant. Ariovistus, quī maiōrem numerum Germānōrum trādūcere cupiēbat, Sēquanōs dē magnā parte agrī ipsōrum dēcēdere iusserat. Itaque eī quī antea sociī Ariovistī fuerant tum potentiam eius maximē verēbantur. Omnēs Gallī dixerunt sē nōn posse diūtius imperium eius sustinēre. Exīstimābant Caesarem auxilium ferre posse.

422. 1. On that day our army followed the enemy. 2. Why did they use boats? 3. At that time they could not gain possession of the bridge. 4. They all tried to follow, but they could not cross the river. 5. Having promised aid, the leader withdrew.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **ūtor** in the present and future of the indicative. (2) Give all the infinitives and participles of **ūtor**. (3) Give a synopsis of **sequor** and of **potior** in the third person singular. (4) Explain the case of **explōrātōribus** in sentence 3, and of **castrīs** in sentence 4, **421**. (5) Explain the case of **sē**, line 11, **421**. (6) Explain the use of the infinitive **ferre** in line 12, **421**.

FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

423.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aciēs, -ēī, F.	adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
cīvis, cīvis, M. and F.	āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversum
cliēns, clientis, M.	cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum
collis, collis, M.	committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
equitātus, -ūs, M.	cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
latus, lateris, N.	cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum
metus, -ūs, M.	cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum
multitūdō, -inis, F.	convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum
opus, operis, N.	dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
prīncipātus, -ūs, M.	ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
senātus, -ūs, M.	īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
supplicium, -ī, N.	īnstruō, -ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum
ego, mei	īntellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum
tū, tuī	laccessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum
brevis, -e	pereō, -īre, -īī or -īvī, -ītum
īngēns, <i>gen.</i> ingentis	polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum
medius, -a, -um	possum, posse, potuī
posterus, -a, -um	potior, potīrī, potītus sum
veterānus, -a, -um	redeō, -īre, -īī or -īvī, -ītum
circiter	renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
deinde	restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum
dēnique	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
etiam	sustineō, -ēre, -uī, sustentum
postea	tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum
proximē	ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum
solum	vereor, verērī, veritus sum

424.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

advent	confer	intelligent	senate
brevity	contradict	lateral	sequence
civic	infer	multitude	sustain
client	intellect	operation	use

LESSON LXXI

**DEPONENT VERBS (Continued): PREDICATE NOMINATIVE
WITH PASSIVE VERBS****DEPONENT VERBS (Continued)**

425. Deponent verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ior** are conjugated as follows:

ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum, enter

PRESENT		FUTURE	
SINGULAR			
ingredior		ingrediar	
ingrederis or ingredere		ingrediēris or ingrediēre	
ingreditur			<i>etc.</i>
PLURAL		PERFECT	
ingredimur		ingressus sum,	
ingrediminī			<i>etc.</i>
ingrediuntur		PAST PERFECT	
		ingressus eram,	
			<i>etc.</i>
PAST		FUTURE PERFECT	
ingrediēbar		ingressus erō,	
ingrediēbāris or ingrediēbāre,			<i>etc.</i>
	<i>etc.</i>		

<i>Infinitives</i>	<i>Participles</i>	<i>Imperative</i>
PRES. ingredi	PRES. ingrediēns	SING. ingredere
PAST ingressus esse	PAST ingressus	PLUR. ingredimini
FUT. ingressūrus esse	FUT. ingressūrus	

THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE WITH CERTAIN PASSIVE VERBS

426. Verbs meaning to *call, name, appoint, make*, and the like, when used in the passive, may be followed by a predicate nominative.

Ariovistus rēx appellātus est, Ariovistus was called king.

a. A predicate noun used with an infinitive which has its subject in the accusative is also in the accusative.

THE DEFECTIVE VERB COEPI

427. The verb **coepi**, *I began*, is used only in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. The other tenses are replaced by forms of **incipiō**.

428.

VOCABULARY

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum , call, name	intrā , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , within, into
C. , <i>abbreviation for Gaius, a Roman name</i>	Marius, -i, m. , <i>Marius, a Ro- man name; Gaius Marius, a famous Roman general</i>
coepi, coepisse, coeptum , began	memoria, -ae, f. , <i>memory</i>
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum , enter, invade (<i>some- times followed by intrā and accusative</i>)	Vesontiō, Vesontiōnis, m. , <i>Vesontio, a town of Gaul, now Besançon</i>

EXERCISES

429. 1. *Celtae Gallī appellantur.* 2. *Tum frūmentum Vesontiōnem cōferre coepērunt.* 3. *Iloc flūmen quod Helvētiī trānsibant Arar appellātur.* 4. *Caesar intrā finēs Gallōrum ingressus est et multa oppida eōrum cēpit.* 5. *Gallī magnīs scūtīs ūsī sunt.* 6. *Dicis hoc oppidum appellārī Genavam.* 7. *Impigrē laborāre coeperās quod patrī tuō placēre cupiēbās.*

CAESAR PROMISES HELP

Caesar Haeduōs dēfendere cōstituit quod hī ā senātū frātrēs appellāti erant. Itaque auxilium suum pollicitus est. Ōlim Germānī intrā prōvinciam ingressī erant atque magnam calamitātem intulerant. Dēnique ā C. Mariō superāti sunt, sed memoria eius bellī apud Rōmānōs manēbat.



STREET OF POMPEII

430. 1. The Haeduans were called friends by the Romans. 2. The Gauls began to set fire to their villages. 3. Orgetorix was called the leader of the Helvetians. 4. We shall gain possession of the weapons of the enemy. 5. The soldiers did not use javelins. 6. Those who had begun to cross the river were repulsed. 7. This town of the Gauls is called Vesontio. 8. The cavalry could not follow through the mountains.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **coepti** in the perfect and the past perfect of the indicative. (2) Give a synopsis of **ingredior** in the second person singular and the third person plural. (3) Name the verbs which take their objects in the ablative. (4) Explain the case of **Arar** in sentence 3, **429**. (5) Explain the case of **Genavam** in sentence 6, **429**.

LESSON LXXII

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN: INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

431. The interrogative pronoun **quis? quid? who? what?** is declined as follows in the singular:

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quis.	quid
GEN.	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quō

The plural forms are the same as those of the relative pronoun.

a. The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod**, is declined like the relative, except that the masculine nominative singular may be either **quī** or **quis**.

Quis hoc fēcit? *Who did this?* (pronoun)

Quod templum incēsum est? *What temple was burned?* (adjective)

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

432. (1) Questions which merely ask for information and have no interrogative pronoun or adverb, usually have the enclitic **-ne** added to the first word.

Vēnitne legiō? *Has the legion come?*

(2) Questions which imply that the answer "yes" is expected are regularly introduced by **nōnne**.

Nōnne Caesar fortis erat? *Was not Caesar brave?*

433.

VOCABULARY

colloquium , -ī, N., conference, interview	insolenter , <i>adv.</i> , insolently
cōsulātus , -ūs, M., consulship	queror , queri , questus sum , complain
eō , <i>adv.</i> , to that place, there, thither	quis , quid , who? what? (<i>for</i> <i>adj. forms</i> , see 431, a)
gravor , -ārī, gravātus sum , be unwilling	respondeō , -ēre, respondi , respōnsum , answer, reply

EXERCISES

434. 1. Quis colloquium postulāvit? 2. Nōne Caesar id postulāvit? 3. Nōne Ariovistus ad colloquium vēnit? 4. Responditne insolenter lēgātis quī ad eum vēnerant? 5. Quid Ariovistus timēbat? 6. Lēgātus cum ducibus eō pervēnit. 7. Cuius gladium hic puer fert? 8. Helvētīi in hōc itinere magnō numerō carrōrum ūsī sunt.

CAESAR REQUESTS A CONFERENCE

Caesar ad Ariovistum lēgātōs (*envoys*) mīsit et colloquium postulāvit. In cōsulātū Caesaris Ariovistus ā senātū amīcus appellātus erat. Sed tamen ad colloquium venīre gravābātur et insolenter respondit. Caesar iterum lēgātōs mīsit et dē iniūriis Haeduōrum questus est. Eadem respōnsa ab Ariovistō data sunt quae antea (data erant).

435. 1. Who complained regarding the wrongs of the Haeduans? 2. Did not Caesar make war on the Helvetians? 3. Were the Romans defeated? 4. What did the man who ascended the mountain see? 5. Is this river wide? 6. What legion will be sent there?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the derivation and the meaning of the English words *colloquy* and *querulous*. (2) Explain the derivation of the Latin noun **respōnsum**. (3) Compare the adverb **insolenter** (from the adjective **insolēns**). (4) Decline **cōsulātus** in the singular. (5) Decline the relative pronoun.

LESSON LXXIII

QUIDAM, QUISQUE: IMPERSONAL VERBSDECLENSION OF *QUIDAM* AND *QUISQUE*

436. The indefinite pronoun or adjective **quidam**, *a certain, a certain one*, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam or quiddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	euidam	euidam	euidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quoddam or quiddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL			
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. The form **quiddam** is used as a pronoun, **quoddam** as an adjective.

b. **Quidam** may sometimes be translated by the indefinite article *a* or *an*.

437. **Quisque**, *each*, when used as a pronoun is declined as follows in the singular:

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quisque	quidque
GEN.	cuiusque	cuiusque
DAT.	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemque	quidque
ABL.	quōque	quōque

a. As an adjective the nominative is **quisque, quaeque, quodque**, and the other case forms are the same as those of the relative, with the suffix **-que**. The plural is rare.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

438. Impersonal verbs have only the third person singular, the infinitives, and occasionally the participles. They are sometimes translated by English impersonal verbs with *it* as subject, but the English equivalent is often a verb with a personal subject. Many of these may take a clause or an infinitive with or without the accusative as subject. Among the most important are **oportet** and **licet**.

Sum venīre oportet, *he ought to come (it is necessary for him to come)*.

a. Many intransitive verbs also are used impersonally in the passive.

Pugnātur, *it is being fought (a fight is going on)*.
Perventum est, *it was arrived (they arrived)*.

439.

VOCABULARY

Cimberius , -ī, m., Cimberius, a German chief	quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam , a certain, a certain man, etc.
licet , -ēre, licuit , it is per- mitted	quisque, quidque, pron. , each one, each; <i>as adj.</i> , quisque, quaeque, quodque , each
Nasua , -ae, m., Nasua, a Ger- man chief	Rhēnus , -ī, m., the Rhine
oportet , -ēre, oportuit , it is necessary, it is proper, one ought	rīpa , -ae, f., bank (<i>of a stream</i>) Suebī , -ōrum, m. pl., the Suebi

EXERCISES

440. 1. Statim prōcēdere licet. 2. Amīcum manēre oportet. 3. Quisque sēcum frūmentum tulit. 4. Quendam militem

ad castra hostium misit. 5. Fortiter pugnātum est. 6. Diū ab Helvētiis pugnātum erat. 7. Quidam Gallus cum epistulā ad urbem missus est. 8. Quemque frūmentum domō portāre iussērunt.

THE SUEBI AT THE RHINE

Intereā nova manus Germānōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerat et trānsire cōnābātur. Hī erant Suēbī, quae gēns est magnae virtūtis inter Germānōs. Duo frātrēs, Nasua et Cimmerius, eis praeerant. Lēgātī Haeduōrum et Trêverōrum eam rem Caesarī ēnūntiāvērunt. His rēbus auditis, Caesar frūmentum comparāvit et ad Ariovistum contendit.



ROMAN MOSAIC

441. 1. We gave a reward to each. 2. A certain man demanded aid. 3. The soldier ought to fight bravely. 4. They ordered each one to carry a weapon. 5. No one ought to fear. 6. The Germans did not attack Vesontio, because they could not cross the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **quidam civis**. (2) Give all the forms of **oportet** in the indicative. (3) Give the perfect infinitives of **licet** and **oportet**. (4) Explain the case of **amicum** in sentence 2, and of **domo** in sentence 8, 440. (5) Give the Latin noun with which the English word *riparian* is connected in derivation, and explain its meaning in the phrase *riparian rights*.

LESSON LXXIV

SEMI-DEPONENTS: THE ENCLITIC *-QUE*

SEMI-DEPONENTS

442. There are four verbs which are deponent in the perfect system but which have active forms in the present system. Their principal parts are as follows:

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fidō, fidere, fisis sum, trust

- a. The compounds of **fidō**, also, are semi-deponents.
 b. The synopsis of **audeō** in the first person singular of the indicative is as follows:

PRES. audeō	PERF. ausus sum
PAST audēbam	P. PERF. ausus eram
FUT. audēbō	F. PERF. ausus erō

THE ENCLITIC *-QUE*

443. The enclitic conjunction **-que, and**, connects more closely than **et**. It is translated before the word to which it is joined.

Legiō equitātusque, *the legion and the cavalry.*

444.

VOCABULARY

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare	prior, prius, comparative adjective, former, first, previous
cingō, -ere, cīnxi, cinctum, surround	-que, and
facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity, supply	soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
paene, adv., almost	ūsus, -ūs, M., use, advantage

EXERCISES

445. 1. Paene omnēs equitēs in eō proeliō interfectī sunt. 2. Quod ea legiō nōn prior trānsire audēbat, proelium nōn commissum est. 3. Militēs veterānī nōn fugere solent, sed eō diē perterriti sunt. 4. Nēmō dicere ausus est. 5. Obsidēs accipere solitī erant. 6. Dux militēsque interfectī sunt. 7. Caesarem eōs prohibēre oportet. 8. Quandam urbem incendērunt. 9. Mēcum ire licet.

THE RACE FOR VESONTIO

Ariovistus Vesontiōnem occupāre cōnātus est. Id erat maximum oppidum Sēquanōrum et magnam facultātem habēbat eārum rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī (196) erant. Flūmen paene tōtam urbem cingēbat atque ūnā ex parte erat mōns magnā altitūdine. Quod hoc oppidum facile dēfendī poterat Caesar quoque id occupāre cupiēbat. Itaque magnīs itineribus eō contendit et prior advēnit.

446. 1. The soldiers did not dare complain. 2. They had always been accustomed to do this. 3. The town and the camp will be set on fire. 4. We ought to go at once. 5. Caesar said that (395) the town was easily defended. 6. He will hasten to that place with the cavalry. 7. Slave, do you dare kill Gaius Marius?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **soleō** in the third person singular and plural in the indicative. (2) Give a synopsis of **fidō** in the first person singular and the third person singular in the indicative. (3) Decline **prior**. (4) Give the accusative singular and plural of **quidam**. (5) Conjugate **cingō** in the perfect active and the past perfect passive of the indicative.

LESSON LXXV

ALIQUIS, QUISQUAM: ABLATIVE OF CAUSE**THE INDEFINITES ALIQUIS AND QUISQUAM**

447. The indefinite pronoun **aliquis**, *someone, anyone*, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	aliquis <i>or</i> aliquī	aliqua	aliquid <i>or</i> aliquod
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid <i>or</i> aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL			
NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. The forms **aliquis** and **aliquid** in the singular are used as pronouns; the forms **aliquī**, **aliqua**, and **aliquod** are adjectives, with the meaning *some*.

448. The indefinite pronoun **quisquam**, *any one at all*, is declined as follows:

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quisquam	quicquam
GEN.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
DAT.	cuiquam	cuiquam
ACC.	quemquam	quicquam
ABL.	quōquam	quōquam

a. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in sentences containing a negative or a comparative, or in conditions. It has no plural. The plural forms of **ūllus** are used when a plural is needed.

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

449. The ablative with or without a preposition (**ab, dē, ex**) is used to express cause.

Multis dē causis, for many reasons (because of many reasons).

Numerō suō glōriāti sunt, they boasted of their numbers (because of their numbers).

450.

VOCABULARY

aliquis , aliquid , <i>pron.</i> , some	magnitūdō , magnitūdinis , <i>f.</i> ,
one; aliqui , aliqua , aliquod ,	size, magnitude
<i>adj.</i> , some	quisquam , quicquam , any one
flēō , flēre , flēvi , flētum , weep,	at all
lament	tabernāculum , -ī , <i>N.</i> , tent
glōrior , -āri , glōriātus sum ,	testāmentum , -ī , <i>N.</i> , will
boast	timor , timōris , <i>m.</i> , fear

EXERCISES

451. 1. **Lēgātus** aliquem cum **epistulā** mīsit. 2. **Nūllus** sonus in **eō** locō **auditus** est neque **quisquam** **vīsus** est. 3. **Caesar** **virtūte** **ūnīus** **legiōnis** **glōriātus** est. 4. **Intellegimus** eum **glōriātum** esse. 5. **Existimāvit** eam **legiōnem** **fortissimam** esse.

PANIC IN THE ROMAN ARMY

In **eō** oppidō **exercitus** **paucōs** **diēs** **mānsit**. **Hīs** **diēbus** **mīlītēs** **perterriti** sunt quod **Galli** **dixerunt** **Germanōs** **magnā** **virtūte** et **ingentī** **magnitūdine** **corporum** esse. **Is** **timor** **tōtūm** **exercitūm** **occupāvit**. **Multi** **flentēs** **ad** **tabernācula** **sua** **iērunt** et **testāmenta** **fēcērunt**. **Magnae** **silvae** **inter** **Ariovistum** et **exercitūm** **Rōmānum** **erant**, et **iter** **erat** **periculōsum**.

452. 1. Some one saw the boy in the forest. 2. You often boast of the friendship of the Romans. 3. For (from) these reasons the town will be easily defended. 4. Roman soldiers were not always brave, but they defeated many enemies. 5. Diviciacus, weeping, implored aid from Caesar. 6. I have never given praise to anyone who did not work.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **glōrior** in the third person singular in the indicative. (2) Explain what is meant by an *impersonal verb*. (3) Give all the forms of **licet** in the indicative. (4) Decline the interrogative pronoun. (5) Explain the case of **virtūte** in sentence 3, **451**.

FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

- 453.** (1) Interrogative pronouns.
 (2) The declension of **quīdam** and **quisque**.
 (3) The declension of **aliquis** and **quisquam**.
 (4) Deponent verbs.
 (5) The conjugation of **ferō**.
 (6) Semi-deponent verbs.
 (7) The imperative mood.
 (8) The predicate nominative with passive verbs.
 (9) The ablative of cause.
 (10) The ablative with **ūtor**, etc.

454. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

appeal	license	respond
audacious	magnitude	tabernacle
colloquy	memory	testament
faculty	priority	timorous
ingredient	querulous	

LESSON LXXVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

455. The subjunctive mood has four tenses, the present, the past, the perfect, and the past perfect.

The present subjunctive of the first and second conjugations is as follows:

ACTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
portem	portēmus	moneam	moneāmus
portēs	portētis	moneās	moneātis
portet	portent	moneat	moneant

PASSIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
porter	portēmur	monear	moneāmur
portēris, -re	portēminī	moneāris, -re	moneāminī
portētur	portentur	moneātur	moneantur

a. The sign of the present subjunctive in the first conjugation is *ē*, which replaces the characteristic *ā* of the conjugation. In the second conjugation the sign is *ē*, which is added to the present stem.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE

456. The subjunctive expresses a variety of ideas, among the most important of which is *desire* (*will* or *wish*).

a. The expression of desire may consist in urging someone to act with the speaker.

Eum iuvēmus, let us help him.

b. The act desired may be expressed in the form of an order to be carried out by someone else than the person addressed.

Legiō impetum faciat, let the legion make an attack.

c. The negative used with the subjunctive of desire is **nē**.

Nē eum moneāmus, let us not warn him.

457.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., cen-	incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
turion, an officer in the	reprimand
Roman army	mēns, mentis, f., mind, dis-
cupiditās, -tātis, f., eagerness,	position, attitude
desire	nē, adv., not (with subj. in
decimus, -a, -um, tenth	expressions of desire, etc.)
doceō, -ēre, docui, doctum,	praecipuē, adv., especially
teach, tell	vehementer, adv., severely

EXERCISES

458. 1. Hōs militēs moneāmus. 2. Servi gladiōs et scūta portent. 3. Centuriō in eō locō maneat. 4. Nē eum vehementer incūsēmus. 5. Impigrē hodiē labōrēmus et hoc opus cōficiāmus.

ORDER AND COURAGE RESTORED

Convocātō conciliō Caesar militēs et centuriōnēs vehementer incūsāvit. Eōs docuit (*told*) nūllam causam esse timōris. Decimam legiōnem quae nōn timuerat praecipuē laudāvit. Verbis eius mentēs eōrum conversae sunt et cupiditās bellī inlāta est. Tum castra mōvit et septem diēs iter fēcit ad ea loca in quibus Ariovistum esse audierat.

459. 1. Let us move camp at once. 2. Let the legion make an attack. 3. Let us praise the centurions of this legion. 4. Let them not fear this enemy whom they have

often conquered. 5. The mountain which overhung was of great height. 6. The legions have not dared to follow the Germans through the forests.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **doceō** and **incūsō** in the present subjunctive, active and passive. (2) Conjugate **cōnor** and **polliceor** in the present subjunctive. (3) Name the tense and the mood of each verb in the sentences of 458. (4) Decline **quisque**. (5) Name the semi-deponent verbs.

LESSON LXXVII

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE: PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

460. The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses introduced by **ut**, *that*, or **nē**, *that not*, to express the purpose of the main act.

Fugit ut periculum vitet, *he flees that he may avoid danger (in order to avoid danger).*

Auxilium mittit nē hostēs oppidum capiant, *he sends aid that the enemy may not capture the town.*

a. The act which is expressed by a clause of this form is one which is desired (or one the prevention of which is desired). Hence the force of the mood is the same as in the independent clauses of the preceding lesson; that is, it expresses *desire* or, more exactly, *will*.

b. In English, purpose is commonly expressed by the infinitive or by phrases introduced by *in order to*, or by clauses introduced by *that* or *in order that*.

He came to see his friend; he came in order to see his friend; he came in order that he might see his friend.

Such phrases or clauses cannot be translated into Latin by the infinitive, but are rendered by **ut** (or **nē**) and the subjunctive. If the purpose clause is negative, **nē** is used.

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

461.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

dūcam	capiam	audiam
dūcās	capiās	audiās
dūcat	capiat	audiat

PLURAL

dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
dūcant	capiant	audiant

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

dūcar	capiar	audiar
dūcāris, -re	capiāris, -re	audiāris, -re
dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur

PLURAL

dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

462.

VOCABULARY

adventus , -ūs, m., arrival, approach	pedes, peditis , m., foot soldier; <i>pl.</i> , infantrymen, infantry
gaudeō, gaudere, gāvīsus sum , rejoice	profiscor, proficisci, profectus sum , set out
insidiae, -ārum , <i>F. pl.</i> , treachery, ambush	quintus , -a, -um, fifth
nē, conj. , that not (<i>in clauses of purpose</i>)	ut, conj. , that
	uterque, utraque, utrumque , each of two, each

EXERCISES

463. 1. Uterque proficiscitur ut urbem capiat. 2. Ūnam legiōnem relinquit ut locus mūniātur. 3. Iter āvertunt ut cōpiās Rōmānās sequantur. 4. Aciem instruit ut proelium committat. 5. Auxilium implōrant nē urbēs incendantur. 6. Cum omnibus cōpiīs proficiscāmur. 7. Caesar gāvīsus est quod Ariovistus colloquium postulāverat.

A CONFERENCE IS ARRANGED

Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mīsit ut colloquium postulārent. Diēs colloquiō cōstitutus est ex eō diē quīntus. Uterque ad colloquium cum equitātū et sine peditibus vēnit quod Ariovistus dixit sē verērī insidiās. Sed Caesar decimam legiōnem prō equitātū dūxit quod equitātūī fidem nōn habēbat.

464. 1. He sends envoys in order to demand (that he may demand) a conference. 2. He remains in the city to see his friend. 3. He sends the soldiers that the town may be defended. 4. He brings (leads) the legion that he may not be surrounded (**circumvenire**) through treachery. 5. Let us bring the cavalry and one legion with us (387).

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **mittō** and **venīō** in the present active subjunctive. (2) Conjugate **proficiscor** and **potior** in the present subjunctive. (3) Give the third person plural of the present active subjunctive of **laudō**, **moveō**, **dēfendō**, and **mūniō**. (4) Conjugate **proficiscor** in the future tense. (5) Indicate the tense sign and personal ending of **moveat**.



ROMAN SEAL RINGS

LESSON LXXIX

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF DESIRE: PAST
SUBJUNCTIVETHE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEPENDING ON WORDS OF
DESIRE

470. Many verbs expressing or implying an idea of desire, such as those meaning *to persuade, command, urge, determine, wish*, and the like, may take as object a clause with its verb in the subjunctive. The conjunction is *ut*, negative *nē*. A clause of this kind is usually translated into English by an infinitive phrase.

His persuāsit ut exirent, he persuaded them to go forth.

THE PAST SUBJUNCTIVE

471. The past subjunctive of all regular verbs has the tense sign *rē*¹ before the personal endings. Its forms are made on the present stem.

ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
I.	II.	III.		IV.
portārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audirēs
portāret	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audiret
PLURAL				
portārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
portārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audirētis
portārent	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audirent

¹As has been previously stated, a long vowel in a tense sign or stem ending becomes short before the personal endings -m, -t, -nt, -r, and -ntur.

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

portārer	monērer	dūceret	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audirēris
<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>
portārēre	monērēre	dūcerēre	caperēre	audirēre
portārētur	monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audirētur

PLURAL

portārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
portārēminī	monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audirēminī
portārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audirentur

a. The past subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive, with the necessary changes in quantity. This statement applies to all irregular verbs as well as regular verbs.

472.

VOCABULARY

colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus	imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
sum, confer, converse	command (<i>with dative</i>)
comprehendō, -hendere,	lapis, lapidis, M., stone
-hendī, -hēnsūm, seize	patior, pati, passus sum,
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -ces-	permit, allow
sum, withdraw	redūcō, -ere, redūxi, reduc-
hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, urge	tum, lead back

EXERCISES

473. 1. Eī persuādet ut dēcēdat. 2. Eī persuāsīt ut dēcēderet. 3. Eōs hortātur ut impetum sustineant. 4. Caesar legiōnem hortātus est ut impetum hostium fortiter sustinēret. 5. Militem ad amicum mīsīt quī eum hortārētur ut venīret.

A TREACHEROUS ATTACK

Intereā equitēs Germānōrum appropinquāvērunt et tēla lapidēsque in Rōmānōs iacere coepērunt. Caesar ex colloquiō discessit et suōs (201) ad castra redūxit. Eīs imperāvit nē tēla in Germānōs iacerent. Posteā Ariovistus lēgātōs mīsit et aliud colloquium postulāvit. Caesar duōs lēgātōs mīsit quī cum eō colloquerentur. Sed Ariovistus eōs comprehendit neque dicere passus est.



CAESAR'S TRIUMPH

474. 1. I persuaded the boy to remain. 2. The man persuaded his brother to withdraw. 3. The soldiers urged the centurions to lead them to the camp. 4. No one commanded (**imperāre**) you to do this. 5. The king persuaded the Germans to cross the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **hortor** and **colloquor** in the past subjunctive. (2) Decline together **idem lapis**. (3) Give a synopsis of **potior** in the third person singular, in the indicative and in the present and the past subjunctive. (4) Explain the mood of **hortārētur** and of **venīret** in sentence 5, 473. (5) Analyze the forms **sustinērent** and **hortārētur**.

LESSON LXXX

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FERŌ* AND *EŌ*: ANTICIPATORY
SUBJUNCTIVETHE PRESENT AND PAST SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FERŌ* AND *EŌ*

475.

PRESENT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
feram	ferāmus	ferar	ferāmur
ferās	ferātis	ferāris or ferāre	ferāminī
ferat	ferant	ferātur	ferantur

PAST

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
ferrem	ferrēmus	ferrer	ferrēmur
ferrēs	ferrētis	ferrēris or ferrēre	ferrēminī
ferret	ferrent	ferrētur	ferrentur

PRESENT

PAST

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
eam	eāmus	irem	irēmus
eās	eātis	irēs	irētis
eat	eant	iret	irent

THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

476. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to refer to an act as expected or anticipated.

Exspectāvit dum frāter rediret, he waited until his brother should return.

a. The Anticipatory Subjunctive is most frequently used after conjunctions meaning *until* or *before*.

477.

VOCABULARY

commeātus , -ūs, m., supplies	dum , <i>conj.</i> , until
cōnsidō , -sidere, -sēdī, -ses-	interclūdō , -ere, interclūsī ,
sum, encamp	interclūsum , cut off
contineō , -ēre, continūi , con-	postridiē , <i>adv.</i> , the next day
tentum, restrain	ultrā , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , beyond

EXERCISES

478. 1. Auxilium mīsit priusquam urbs caperētur. 2. In castrīs expectābant dum auxilium ferrētur. 3. Ad oppidum pervēnit priusquam hostēs fugerent. 4. Ex urbe exeāmus ut proelium committāmus. 5. Domī puer manēbat dum frāter redīret. 6. Auxilium ferāmus et amīcōs iuvēmus.

CAESAR OFFERS BATTLE

Eōdem diē Ariovistus castra mōvit et sex mīlibus passuum ā Caesaris castrīs cōnsēdit. Postridiē castra ultrā Caesarem fēcit ut eum commeātū interclūderet. Caesar aciem īnstrūxit sed Ariovistus suōs castrīs (*in camp*) continuit, neque proelium commisit. Equitēs autem Germānōrum cum equitātū Rōmānōrum proeliō contendēbant.

479. 1. The Germans waited until Caesar should move camp. 2. We seized the camp before the enemy fled. 3. The soldiers will set out to bring aid. 4. The centurion urged the legion to go by this road (that it should go, etc.). 5. Ariovistus restrained his men until the Romans should move their camp.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Conjugate **cōnferō** in the present subjunctive passive and the past subjunctive active. (2) Conjugate **trānseō** in the present and past subjunctive. (3) Give a synopsis of **exeō** in the third person plural of the indicative and in the present and past subjunctive. (4) Explain the mood of **fugerent** in sentence 3, **478**.

SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

480.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

adventus, -ūs, M.	aliquis, aliquid
commeātus, -ūs, M.	quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
cōsulātus, -ūs, M.	quis? quid?
cupiditās, -tātis, F.	quisquam, quicquam
facultās, -tātis, F.	quisque, quidque
īnsidiae, -ārum, F. <i>pl.</i>	uterque, utraque, utrumque
lapis, lapidis, M.	appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
mēns, mentis, F.	audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
pedes, peditis, M.	cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnetum
postulātum, -ī, N.	coepī, coepisse, coeptum
rīpa, -ae, F.	colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum
tabernāculum, -ī, N.	contineō, -ēre, continuī, contentum
testāmentum, -ī, N.	doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum
timor, timōris, M.	gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
ūsus, -ūs, M.	glōrior, -ārī, glōriātus sum
parātus, -a, -um	hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum
prior, prius	imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
arroganter	ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum
eō	licet, licēre, licuit
insolenter	loquor, loquī, locūtus sum
ita	oportet, -ēre, oportuit
paene	patior, patī, passus sum
postridiē	queror, querī, questus sum
praecipuē	redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reductum
vehementer	soleō, -ēre, solitus sum

481.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

arrogantly	docile	loquacious
comprehend	exhort	mental
contain	imperative	reduce
cupidity	insidious	vehemently

LESSON LXXXI

PAST SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*: RESULT CLAUSESTHE PAST SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*

482. The irregular verb *sum* and its compound, *possum*, are conjugated in the past subjunctive as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

a. These forms may be found by adding the personal endings to the present infinitives (471, a).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

483. Subordinate clauses expressing result are introduced by *ut* (occasionally by a relative pronoun) and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

Ita arroganter respondit ut omnēs irāti essent, he answered so arrogantly that all were angry.

a. The negative used in clauses of result is *nōn*.

b. The subjunctive in these clauses usually states a fact and is translated by the English indicative, as in the example above.

484.

VOCABULARY

dēligō, -ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctum,
choose, select
diligenter, adv., diligently
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, ap-
propriate

perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, per-
fectum, complete
tam, adv., so (with adjectives
or adverbs)
undique, adv., on all sides

EXERCISES

485. 1. Tam celeriter militēs castra undique circumvērunt ut nēmō fugere posset. 2. Puerī tam diligenter laborāvērunt ut multī eōs laudārent. 3. Illis hominibus persuāsimus ut nōbīs amicī essent. 4. Legiō pervenire contendēbat priusquam oppidum expugnārētur. 5. Militēs ita ācriter pugnāvērunt ut omnēs hostēs fugerent.

THE ROMANS FORTIFY ANOTHER CAMP

Ubi (*when*) Caesar vidit Germānōs castrīs sē continēre, aliud cōnsilium cēpit (*formed*). Locum idōneum dēlēgit et castra parva mūnīre coepit. Ariovistus equitēs ad eum locum mīsit quī Rōmānōs terrērent. Hī autem repulsī sunt atque opus perfectum est.

486. 1. The Gauls fought so fiercely that we could not drive them back. 2. The horsemen were so brave that they dared to make an attack on the legion. 3. We could not persuade the soldiers to choose (that they choose) a suitable place. 4. The Romans tried to complete the work before the Helvetians should cross the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **sum** in the third person singular of the indicative and of the present and the past subjunctive. (2) Give a synopsis of **possum** in the third person plural of the indicative and of the present and the past subjunctive. (3) Explain the subjunctive **expugnārētur** in sentence 4, 485. (4) Compare the adverb **diligenter** (from the adjective **diligēns**). (5) Conjugate **perficiō** in the present and the past subjunctive, active voice.

LESSON LXXXII

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

487. The perfect active subjunctive is formed on the perfect stem, with the tense sign **erī**.

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.	IV.
portāverim	monuerim	dūxerim	audīverim
portāverīs	monuerīs	dūxerīs	audīverīs
portāverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audīverit

PLURAL

portāverīmus	monuerīmus	dūxerīmus	audīverīmus
portāverītis	monuerītis	dūxerītis	audīverītis
portāverint	monuerint	dūxerint	audīverint

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

488. The perfect passive subjunctive is made up of the past participle and the present subjunctive of **sum**.

portātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	audītus sim
portātus sīs,	monitus sīs,	ductus sīs,	audītus sīs,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

489. An indirect question is a question which is quoted with changed form. Indirect questions depend on words of asking, knowing, perceiving, and the like:

He asked who the man was. (Direct, *Who is the man?*)

In Latin, an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Sciō cūr timeās, *I know why you fear.* (Direct, **Cūr timēs?** *Why do you fear?*)

490.

VOCABULARY

arbitror, -ārī, arbitratūs sum,	ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductum,
think	lead out
cōfidō, -ere, cōnfisus sum	quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quae-
(442), trust (<i>usually takes</i>	situm, ask
<i>dative</i>)	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know
dēmum, <i>adv.</i> , at last	vesper, vesperī, <i>m.</i> , evening

EXERCISES

491. 1. Quaerō quis hic homō sit. 2. Nēmō intellegit quis hoc dōnum mīserit. 3. Scīmus cūr omnēs hunc puerum monuerint. 4. Nōn reperīre possum in quō locō amīcī nostrī habitāverint. 5. Pater tuus huic hominī nōn cōnfidit quod eum honestum esse nōn arbitrātur. 6. Tam diū in silvā mānsit ut ante noctem domum pervenīre nōn posset.

THE BATTLE BEGINS

Caesar duās legiōnēs in castrīs minōribus reliquit nē comēatū prohibērētur. Reliquōs in castra maiōra redūxit. Ariovistus statim partem cōpiārum mīsīt quae impetum in eās legiōnēs faceret. Acrīter ad vesperum pugnātum est (438, *a*), sed Germānī repulsī sunt. Tum dēmum Ariovistus omnēs cōpiās ēdūxit ut proeliō dēcertāret.

492. 1. We know who has heard this. 2. The man asks who has promised a reward. 3. No one thinks that the enemy are brave. 4. The leader knows who has captured the town. 5. We shall find out where you have been. 6. The camp was so placed that the soldiers could see the bank of the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **possum** in the perfect indicative and the perfect subjunctive. (2) Conjugate **ferō** in the perfect subjunctive, active and passive. (3) Give a synopsis of **cōnfidō** in the third person singular of the indicative. (4) Explain the mood of **mīserit** in sentence 2, and of **posset** in sentence 6, 491. (5) Explain the mood of **faceret**, line 10, 491, and of **dēcertāret**, line 12, 491.

LESSON LXXXIII

PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

493. The past perfect subjunctive in the active voice is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign *issē*.

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.	IV.
portāvissem	monuisssem	dūxissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	monuissēs	dūxissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	monuisset	dūxisset	audīvisset

PLURAL

portāvissēmus	monuissēmus	dūxissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	monuissētis	dūxissētis	audīvissētis
portāvissent	monuissent	dūxissent	audīvissent

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

494. The past perfect subjunctive in the passive voice is made up of the past participle and the past subjunctive of *sum*.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
portātus essem	monitus essem	ductus essem	audītus essem
portātus essēs, etc.	monitus essēs, etc.	ductus essēs, etc.	audītus essēs, etc.

495.

VOCABULARY

comminus , <i>adv.</i> , hand to hand	prōcurrō , -ere, prōcurrī , prō- cursum , run forward
dexter , dextra , dextrum , right hand, right	sinister , sinistra , sinistrum , left hand, left
firmus , -a, -um, firm, strong	videor , vidērī , visus sum (passive of videō as de- ponent), seem
minimē , <i>adv.</i> , least	
premō , -ere, pressī , pressum , press hard, press	

EXERCISES

496. 1. Puer quaesiv̄it cūr amīcus suus auxilium postulāvisset. 2. Lēgātus repperit cūr mīlitēs urbem nōn dēfendissent. 3. Crassus auxilium tulit nē ea pars repellerētur. 4. Tam celeriter prōcurrērunt ut statim comminus pugnārētur. 5. Centuriō locum castrīs (*for a camp*) dēlēgit quī idōneus vidēbātur.

A HARD-FOUGHT BATTLE

Caesar ā dextrō cornū proelium commisit quod ea pars hostium minimē firma erat. Militēs Rōmānī ācrit̄er impetum fēcērunt et Germānī celeriter prōcurrērunt. Comminus pugnatū est. Germānī ā sinistrā parte repulsī sunt sed ā dextrā parte vehementer Rōmānōs premēbant. Ad eam partem P. Crassus quī equitātūī praeerat auxilium tulit.

497. 1. No one knew why the soldiers had come. 2. We asked why the soldiers had not been sent. 3. We know who is defending the town. 4. The centurion persuaded the scouts to set out. 5. Caesar made an attack before the enemy fortified their camp.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **pugnō** and of **portō** in the third person singular, active voice, in the indicative and the subjunctive. (2) Give the tense signs of the past perfect indicative, the perfect subjunctive, and the past perfect subjunctive in the active voice. (3) Explain the mood of **repellerētur** in sentence 3, **496**. (4) Decline in the singular the words **cornū dextrum**.

LESSON LXXXIV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

498. A direct quotation is one which repeats the **exact** words of the original speaker.

He said, "I will come."

An indirect quotation is one which repeats the thought, but not the exact words of the original speaker.

He said that he would come.

In English, an indirect quotation is commonly introduced by the conjunction *that*; sometimes no conjunction is used.

499. In Latin, indirect quotations are expressed as follows:

- (1) A main clause containing a statement has its verb in the infinitive with the subject in the accusative.
- (2) A main clause containing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.
- (3) All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

**Lēgātus dixit locum quem centuriōnēs
dēlēgissent nōn idōneum esse, the lieu-
tenant said that the place which the
centurions had chosen was not suitable.**

a. The constructions of indirect discourse are used after words of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like*. For this use in simple sentences see 395.

500.

VOCABULARY

incolumis, -e, safe

nam, conj., for

regiō, regiōnis, F., region

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi,

-mānsum, remain

salūs, salūtis, F., safety

tergum, -i, N., back

uxor, uxōris, F., wife

vertō, -ere, verti, versum,
turn; **terga vertere**, flee

EXERCISES

501. 1. Nūntius dicit hostēs oppidum mūnīre quod impetum timeant. 2. Labiēnus cognōverat eās legiōnēs quae trāns flūmen essent in periculō magnō esse. 3. Cōnsidius renūntiāvit Gallōs eum montem tenēre ad quem Labiēnus profectus esset. 4. Ariovistus dīxit sē bellum gerere quod Gallī sē oppugnāvissent. 5. In eā regiōne diū remānsī

ROUT OF THE GERMANS

Dēnique Germānī repulsī sunt et terga vertērunt. Ad flūmen Rhēnum contendērunt quī ex eō locō circiter quīnque mīlia passuum aberat. Ibi paucī trānsiērunt et sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, sed filia eius atque duae uxōrēs interfectae sunt. Nam Ariovistus duās uxōrēs habēbat. Ei lēgātī quōs Caesar miserat repertī sunt et incolumēs reductī sunt.

502. 1. The centurion said that the place which had been chosen for a camp was not suitable. 2. We think the boy is working because he fears his father. 3. The scouts reported to Caesar that the army which was approaching was large. 4. The enemy crossed the river so quickly that we were not able to fortify our camp. 5. The soldiers saw that Caesar was in danger.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the base of the nouns **regiō** and **salūs**. (2) Give the three stems of the verb **vertō**. (3) Give the principal parts of **proficiscor** and of **reperiō**. (4) Conjugate **absum** in the past indicative and past subjunctive. (5) Give all the infinitives of **promō**, active and passive.



ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

LESSON LXXXV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued): *EŌ* (Completed)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

503. The infinitive in indirect discourse is present, past, or future, according as the verb in the direct discourse expressed present, past, or future time.

The subjunctive is regularly present or perfect if the verb on which the indirect discourse depends is present or future. It is regularly past or past perfect if the verb on which the indirect discourse depends is in any tense of past time.

THE CONJUGATION OF *EŌ* (Completed)

504. The imperatives, participles, and infinitives of *eō* are as follows:

<i>Imperatives</i>	<i>Participles</i>	<i>Infinitives</i>
SING. ī	PRES. iēns (<i>gen. euntis</i>)	PRES. ire
PLUR. ite	PAST itum	PAST isse (iisse)
	FUT. itūrus	FUT. itūrus esse

505.

VOCABULARY

<i>citerior, -ius, comparative</i> <i>adj., nearer, hither</i>	<i>redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāc-</i> <i>tum, reduce</i>
<i>crēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum,</i> <i>believe</i>	<i>servitūs, servitūtis, f., slav-</i> <i>ery, servitude</i>
<i>pecūnia, -ae, f., money</i>	<i>Ubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ubii,</i> <i>a German tribe</i>
<i>praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-</i> <i>tum, put in command of</i>	

EXERCISES

506. 1. Centuriō oppidō¹ praefectus est. 2. Labiēnus centuriōnem oppidō praefecit. 3. Caesar vidit Belgās exercitum condūxisse. 4. Omnēs exīstimābant hostēs impetum

¹ See 324.

factūrōs esse. 5. Lēgātus dicit Germānōs discēdere quod pugnāre nōn cupiant. 6. Belgae crēdidērunt Rōmānōs in Galliā remanēre ut eam regiōnem in servitūtem redigerent. 7. Galli auxilium petivērunt et pecūniam polliciti sunt.

THE END OF THE CAMPAIGN

Hōc proeliō cognitō trāns Rhēnum, Suēbī quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant domum redire coepērunt. Ubiī quī eās regiōnēs incolēbant impetum in eōs in itinere fēcērunt atque magnum numerum interfēcērunt. Itaque duo bella ūnā aestāte cōfecta sunt. (Haec erant bellum Helvētiōrum et bellum Germānōrum.) Caesar Labiēnum castris praefēcit: ipse in Galliam citeriōrem profectus est.

507. 1. The Ubii said that their fathers had inhabited that region. 2. The Romans found out that the Germans were brave. 3. Labienus knew that the scouts would set out. 4. The Ubii had not been reduced to (in) slavery. 5. We did not promise money to the slave.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Decline together **meus liber**. (2) Explain the case of **oppidō** in sentence 2, 506. (3) Explain the case of **hostēs** in sentence 4, 506. (4) Give the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **citerior**. (5) Explain the mood of **redigerent** in sentence 6, 506.
-

SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

508. (1) The imperative, infinitives, and participles of **eō**.
 (2) The present subjunctive of regular verbs.
 (3) The present subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**.
 (4) The past subjunctive of regular verbs.
 (5) The past subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**.
 (6) The perfect and past perfect subjunctive.

- (7) The use of the subjunctive in main clauses. .
- (8) Clauses of purpose.
- (9) Substantive clauses of desire.
- (10) The anticipatory subjunctive.
- (11) Indirect questions.
- (12) Indirect discourse.

509. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation :

arbitration	pecuniary	salutary
confide	perfect	servitude
credit	pressure	sinister
dexterity	remain	version
firm	requisition	vespers

LESSON LXXXVI

TENSES OF SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES: DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

510. The relation between the tense of a subjunctive¹ in a subordinate clause and the tense of the verb of the main clause on which it depends is usually as follows:

- (1) If the tense of the main verb denotes present or future time, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.
- (2) If the tense of the main verb denotes past time, the tense of the dependent subjunctive is past or past perfect.
- (3) The present and past tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses denote acts incomplete at the time of the

¹ The relation between the tense of a dependent indicative and that of the main verb is sufficiently evident from the English to cause the pupil no difficulty.

main verb. The perfect and past perfect denote acts complete at the time of the main verb.

a. If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, the dependent subjunctive is sometimes present or perfect.

b. A result clause occasionally has its verb in the perfect after a main tense of past time.

DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

511. A clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*, with its verb in the past or past perfect subjunctive, is used to describe the situation in which the act of the main clause took place.

Cum pōns factus esset, exercitus flūmen trānsiit, when the bridge had been made, the army crossed the river.

512.

VOCABULARY

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	ob, prep. with accusative,
league together, plot	on account of
cum, conj., when, since,	occidō, -ere, occidi, occisum,
although	kill
libertās, -tātis, F., liberty	tantus, -a, -um, so great
mereor, merēri, meritus sum,	inter sē, among themselves,
deserve	to one another, one another

EXERCISES

513. 1. Militēs eō diē magnam laudem meritī sunt. 2. Cum Belgae inter sē coniūrāvissent, bellum parāre coepērunt. 3. Ob eam rem Caesar statim profectus est. 4. Timor tantus erat ut multī flērent. 5. Cum nūntius hoc dixisset, discessit. 6. Cum multī occīsī essent, reliquī fūgērunt.

PLOTS AMONG THE BELGIANS

Cum Caesar in citeriōre Galliā esset, Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre coepērunt. Eae gentēs quae proximae

erant ā Rōmānīs superātae erant. Exercitus Rōmānus in Galliā hiemābat, quod numquam antea factum erat. Itaque Belgae potentiam populi Rōmānī timēbant et libertātem suam dēfendere cōstituērunt. Cōpiās in ūnum locum condūxērunt et bellum parāvērunt.



INTERIOR OF A HOUSE AT POMPEII (RESTORATION)

514. 1. When the lieutenant had drawn up the line of battle, the enemy advanced. 2. The danger was so great that all remained in the city. 3. On account of this fact (*thing*) a legion was sent. 4. When the Belgians had seen this, they began to league together. 5. We cannot remain longer in this region.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **sum** and **possum** in the past perfect indicative and the past perfect subjunctive. (2) Give a synopsis of **possum** in the third person, singular and plural, of the indicative and subjunctive. (3) Give the infinitives of **exeō** and **trānseō**. (4) Explain the mood of **confūrāvissent** in sentence 4, and of **flērent** in sentence 6, 513. (5) Conjugate **occidō** in the perfect subjunctive, active voice.

LESSON LXXXVII

CONJUGATION OF *fiō*: SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACTTHE CONJUGATION OF *fiō*

515. The verb *fiō*, *become* or *be made*, is used as the passive of *faciō* in the present system. The perfect system of *faciō* in the passive is regularly formed with the past participle and the forms of *sum*. The endings of *fiō* are those of the active voice. Its forms will be found in the Appendix, section 35.

a. In this verb the vowel *i* is long before another vowel except in the past subjunctive and the present infinitive.

b. The third person singular, when followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is commonly translated *it happens*, *it results*, *the result is*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT¹ INTRODUCED BY *ut*

516. Some verbs and phrases which express the bringing about of an act or situation may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a dependent clause introduced by *ut*, with its verb in the subjunctive.

The words with which this type of clause is most frequently used are *faciō* and its compounds, and words meaning *to happen*.

Fiēbat ut omnēs timērent, *it resulted (the result was) that all feared.*

Ea res effēcit ut castra tūta essent, *this fact brought it about that the camp was safe (made the camp safe).*

¹ With the compounds of *faciō* a substantive clause of desire is sometimes used (470).

517.

VOCABULARY

certus , -a, -um, certain	Q. , abbreviation for Quintus ,
fiō , fieri, factus sum, become,	a Roman name
be made	Rēmī , -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , the Remi,
frūmentārius , -a, -um, of	a tribe of Gaul
grain; rēs frūmentāria ,	ulterior , ulterius , farther
grain supply	certiōrem (certiōrēs) facere ,
pābulum , -ī, <i>N.</i> , forage	to inform (<i>lit.</i> to make more
Pedius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Pedius, a Ro-	certain); certior (certiōrēs)
man name	fieri , to be informed

a. The phrases **certiōrem** (-ēs) **facere**, **certior** (-ēs) **fieri**, may be followed by an infinitive with subject accusative.

Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt hostēs fūgisse, they informed Caesar that the enemy had fled.

EXERCISES

518. 1. **Fīēbat** ut **nōn** facile domō exīre possent. 2. **Dumnorix** fīit dux equitātūs. 3. **Hic** vir certior factus est moram esse periculōsam. 4. **Dē** hīs rēbus omnēs **certiōrēs** fiunt. 5. **Rēmī** **Caesarem** **certiōrem** faciunt.

CAESAR ORGANIZES A LARGER ARMY

Caesar ā Labiēnō dē eā rē certior factus est. Itaque duās novās legiōnēs in Galliā citeriōre cōscripsit. Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsīt quī eās in Galliam ulteriōrem dūceret. Ipse, cum cōpia pābuli esset, ad exercitum vēnit. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit et quīndecim diēbus ad finēs Belgārū pervēnit. Cum eō (*there*) vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt lēgātōs mīsērunt et pācem petiērunt.

519. 1. All things (**omnia**) which you command are being done. 2. The lieutenant is being informed concerning the danger. 3. The centurion was informed that the enemy were approaching. 4. We have informed the man that this

place is dangerous. 5. When the camp had been moved, the Remi sent envoys.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Decline the phrase **rēs frūmentāria** (used only in the singular).
 (2) Give the Latin noun from which the adjective **frūmentārius** is derived. (3) Conjugate the verb **petō** in the perfect and the past perfect subjunctive passive. (4) Explain the case of **dux** in sentence 2, 518. (5) Explain the mood of **dūceret**, line 7, 518.
-

LESSON LXXXVIII

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES: GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

520. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since*, has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, auxilium ā Caesare petēbant, *since they could not defend themselves, they requested aid from Caesar.*

THE GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

521. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed or the persons making up a collective noun.

Multitūdō Belgārum convēnit, *a multitude of Belgians assembled.*

a. This use is found chiefly with collective nouns.

522.

VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutū-	liberāliter , <i>adv.</i> , generously
rus , be present, be at hand	onus, oneris , <i>N.</i> , burden,
fluō, -ere, flūxī , flow	weight
gravis, -e , heavy, hard to bear,	ōrdō, ordinis , <i>M.</i> , rank, order
serious	vallēs, vallis, -ium , <i>F.</i> , valley

EXERCISES

523. 1. Cum magnus numerus militum in oppidō esset, hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt. 2. Ariovistus magnam multitudinem Germānōrum trādūxerat. 3. Cum iniūriæ hostium gravēs sint, auxilium tuum petimus. 4. Quod onus armōrum magnum erat, nostrī vix flūmen trānsiērunt. 5. Huic puerō persuādere potes ut domī maneat. 6. Eō diē omnēs ordinēs aderant. 7. Hoc flūmen per magnam vallem fluit, et multīs locīs trānsitur.

SUBMISSION OF THE REMI

Dixērunt sē parātōs esse obsidēs dare et Rōmānōs frūmentō iuvāre. Dē hīs rēbus quæ apud Belgās fiēbant, et dē numerō quem quæque civitās ad hoc bellum pollicita erat Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt. Caesar cīs liberāliter respondit et obsidēs eōrum accēpit. Diviciācum Haeduum hortātus est ut cōpiæ Haeduōrum in finēs Belgārum dūcerentur.

524. 1. Since Ariovistus remained in camp, Caesar led back his forces to the town. 2. Since the scouts are not present, we shall send three soldiers. 3. A multitude of Gauls and Germans were killed in flight. 4. The road was so narrow that a few could defend it. 5. When the first ranks had crossed, the rest followed at once.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **Germānōrum** in sentence 2, and of **puerō** in sentence 5, 523. (2) Explain the case of **diē** in sentence 6, 523. (3) Explain the mood of **esset** in sentence 1, 523. (4) Give a synopsis of **adsum** in the third person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive. (5) Give the genitive plural of **ordō** and **vallēs**.



ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

LESSON LXXXV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued): *EŌ* (Completed)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

503. The infinitive in indirect discourse is present, past, or future, according as the verb in the direct discourse expressed present, past, or future time.

The subjunctive is regularly present or perfect if the verb on which the indirect discourse depends is present or future. It is regularly past or past perfect if the verb on which the indirect discourse depends is in any tense of past time.

THE CONJUGATION OF *EŌ* (Completed)

504. The imperatives, participles, and infinitives of *eō* are as follows:

<i>Imperatives</i>	<i>Participles</i>	<i>Infinitives</i>
SING. ī	PRES. iēns (<i>gen. euntis</i>)	PRES. ire
PLUR. ite	PAST itum	PAST īsse (iisse)
	FUT. itūrus	FUT. itūrus esse

505.

VOCABULARY

<i>citerior</i> , -ius, <i>comparative</i> <i>adj.</i> , nearer, hither	<i>redigō</i> , -ere, <i>redēgī</i> , <i>redāc-</i> <i>tum</i> , reduce
<i>crēdō</i> , -dere, -didi, -ditum, believe	<i>servitūs</i> , <i>servitūtis</i> , <i>f.</i> , slav- ery, servitude
<i>pecūnia</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , money	<i>Ubiī</i> , -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , the Ubii, a German tribe
<i>praeficiō</i> , -ficere, -fēcī, -fec- <i>tum</i> , put in command of	

EXERCISES

506. 1. Centuriō oppidō¹ praefectus est. 2. Labiēnus centuriōnem oppidō praefecit. 3. Caesar vidit Belgās exercitum condūxisse. 4. Omnēs exīstimābant hostēs impetum

¹ See 324.

factūrōs esse. 5. Lēgātus dīcit Germānōs discēdere quod pugnāre nōn cupiant. 6. Belgae crēdidērunt Rōmānōs in Galliā remanēre ut eam regiōnem in servitūtem redigerent. 7. Gallī auxilium petivērunt et pecūniam pollicitī sunt.

THE END OF THE CAMPAIGN

Hōc proeliō cognitō trāns Rhēnum, Suēbī quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant domum redīre coepērunt. Ubī quī eās regiōnēs incolēbant impetum in eōs in itinere fēcērunt atque magnum numerum interfēcērunt. Itaque duo bella ūnā aestāte cōfecta sunt. (Haec erant bellum Helvētiōrum et bellum Germānōrum.) Caesar Labiēnum castrīs praefecit: ipse in Galliam citeriōrem profectus est.

507. 1. The Ubii said that their fathers had inhabited that region. 2. The Romans found out that the Germans were brave. 3. Labienus knew that the scouts would set out. 4. The Ubii had not been reduced to (*in*) slavery. 5. We did not promise money to the slave.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Decline together **meus liber**. (2) Explain the case of **oppidō** in sentence 2, 506. (3) Explain the case of **hostēs** in sentence 4, 506. (4) Give the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **citerior**. (5) Explain the mood of **redigerent** in sentence 6, 506.
-

SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

508. (1) The imperative, infinitives, and participles of **eō**.
 (2) The present subjunctive of regular verbs.
 (3) The present subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**.
 (4) The past subjunctive of regular verbs.
 (5) The past subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**.
 (6) The perfect and past perfect subjunctive.

- (7) The use of the subjunctive in main clauses. .
- (8) Clauses of purpose.
- (9) Substantive clauses of desire.
- (10) The anticipatory subjunctive.
- (11) Indirect questions.
- (12) Indirect discourse.

509. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation :

arbitration	pecuniary	salutary
confide	perfect	servitude
credit	pressure	sinister
dexterity	remain	version
firm	requisition	vespers

LESSON LXXXVI

TENSES OF SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES: DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

510. The relation between the tense of a subjunctive¹ in a subordinate clause and the tense of the verb of the main clause on which it depends is usually as follows :

- (1) If the tense of the main verb denotes present or future time, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.
- (2) If the tense of the main verb denotes past time, the tense of the dependent subjunctive is past or past perfect.
- (3) The present and past tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses denote acts incomplete at the time of the

¹ The relation between the tense of a dependent indicative and that of the main verb is sufficiently evident from the English to cause the pupil no difficulty.

main verb. The perfect and past perfect denote acts complete at the time of the main verb.

a. If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, the dependent subjunctive is sometimes present or perfect.

b. A result clause occasionally has its verb in the perfect after a main tense of past time.

DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

511. A clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*, with its verb in the past or past perfect subjunctive, is used to describe the situation in which the act of the main clause took place.

Cum pōns factus esset, exercitus flūmen trānsiit, *when the bridge had been made, the army crossed the river.*

512.

VOCABULARY

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	ob, <i>prep. with accusative,</i>
league together, plot	on account of
cum, conj., when, since,	occidō, -ere, occidi, occisum,
although	kill
libertās, -tātis, F., liberty	tantus, -a, -um, so great
mereor, merēri, meritus sum,	inter sē, among themselves,
deserve	to one another, one another

EXERCISES

513. 1. Militēs eō diē magnam laudem meritī sunt. 2. Cum Belgae inter sē coniūrāvissent, bellum parāre coepērunt. 3. Ob eam rem Caesar statim profectus est. 4. Timor tantus erat ut multi flērent. 5. Cum nūntius hoc dīxisset, discessit. 6. Cum multī occīsī essent, reliquī fūgērunt.

PLOTS AMONG THE BELGIANS

Cum Caesar in citeriōre Galliā esset, Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre coepērunt. Eae gentēs quae proximae

erant ā Rōmānīs superātae erant. Exercitus Rōmānus in Galliā hiemābat, quod numquam antea factum erat. Itaque Belgae potentiam populī Rōmānī timēbant et libertātem suam dēfendere cōstituērunt. Cōpiās in ūnum locum condūxērunt et bellum parāvērunt.



INTERIOR OF A HOUSE AT POMPEII (RESTORATION)

514. 1. When the lieutenant had drawn up the line of battle, the enemy advanced. 2. The danger was so great that all remained in the city. 3. On account of this fact (*thing*) a legion was sent. 4. When the Belgians had seen this, they began to league together. 5. We cannot remain longer in this region.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Conjugate **sum** and **possum** in the past perfect indicative and the past perfect subjunctive.
- (2) Give a synopsis of **possum** in the third person, singular and plural, of the indicative and subjunctive.
- (3) Give the infinitives of **exeō** and **trānseō**.
- (4) Explain the mood of **coniūrāvissent** in sentence 4, and of **flērent** in sentence 6, 513.
- (5) Conjugate **occidō** in the perfect subjunctive, active voice.

LESSON LXXXVII

CONJUGATION OF *fiō*: SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACTTHE CONJUGATION OF *fiō*

515. The verb *fiō*, *become* or *be made*, is used as the passive of *faciō* in the present system. The perfect system of *faciō* in the passive is regularly formed with the past participle and the forms of *sum*. The endings of *fiō* are those of the active voice. Its forms will be found in the Appendix, section 35.

a. In this verb the vowel *i* is long before another vowel except in the past subjunctive and the present infinitive.

b. The third person singular, when followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is commonly translated *it happens*, *it results*, *the result is*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT¹ INTRODUCED BY *ut*

516. Some verbs and phrases which express the bringing about of an act or situation may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a dependent clause introduced by *ut*, with its verb in the subjunctive.

The words with which this type of clause is most frequently used are *faciō* and its compounds, and words meaning *to happen*.

Fiēbat ut omnēs timērent, *it resulted (the result was) that all feared*.

Ea rēs effēcit ut castra tūta essent, *this fact brought it about that the camp was safe (made the camp safe)*.

¹ With the compounds of *faciō* a substantive clause of desire is sometimes used (470).

517.

VOCABULARY

certus , -a, -um, certain	Q. , abbreviation for Quintus ,
fiō , fieri, factus sum , become,	a Roman name
be made	Rēmī , -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , the Remi,
frūmentārius , -a, -um, of	a tribe of Gaul
grain; rēs frūmentāria ,	ulterior , ulterius , farther
grain supply	certiōrem (certiōrēs) facere ,
pābulum , -ī, <i>N.</i> , forage	to inform (<i>lit.</i> to make more
Pedius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Pedius, a Ro-	certain); certior (certiōrēs)
man name	fieri , to be informed

a. The phrases **certiōrem** (-ēs) **facere**, **certior** (-ēs) **fieri**, may be followed by an infinitive with subject accusative.

Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt hostēs fūgisse, *they informed Caesar that the enemy had fled.*

EXERCISES

518. 1. **Fīēbat ut nōn facile domō exīre possent.** 2. **Dumnorīx fit dux equitātūs.** 3. **Hic vir certior factus est moram esse periculōsam.** 4. **Dē hīs rēbus omnēs certiōrēs fiunt.** 5. **Rēmī Caesarem certiōrem faciunt.**

CAESAR ORGANIZES A LARGER ARMY

Caesar ā Labiēnō dē eā rē certior factus est. Itaque duās novās legiōnēs in Galliā ceteriōre cōscripsit. Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsīt quī eās in Galliam ulteriōrem dūceret. Ipse, cum cōpia pābuli esset, ad exercitum vēnit. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit et quīndecim diēbus ad finēs Belgārū pervēnit. Cum eō (*there*) vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt lēgātōs mīsērunt et pācem petiērunt.

519. 1. All things (**omnia**) which you command are being done. 2. The lieutenant is being informed concerning the danger. 3. The centurion was informed that the enemy were approaching. 4. We have informed the man that this

place is dangerous. 5. When the camp had been moved, the Remi sent envoys.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Decline the phrase **rēs frūmentāria** (used only in the singular).
 (2) Give the Latin noun from which the adjective **frūmentārius** is derived. (3) Conjugate the verb **petō** in the perfect and the past perfect subjunctive passive. (4) Explain the case of **dux** in sentence 2, 518. (5) Explain the mood of **dūceret**, line 7, 518.

LESSON LXXXVIII

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES: GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

520. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since*, has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, auxilium ā Caesare petēbant, *since they could not defend themselves, they requested aid from Caesar.*

THE GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

521. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed or the persons making up a collective noun.

Multitūdō Belgārum convēnit, *a multitude of Belgians assembled.*

a. This use is found chiefly with collective nouns.

522.

VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutū-	liberāliter , <i>adv.</i> , generously
rus , be present. be at hand	onus, oneris , <i>N.</i> , burden,
fluō, -ere, flūxī , flow	weight
gravis, -e , heavy, hard to bear,	ōrdō, ordinis , <i>M.</i> , rank, order
serious	vallēs, vallis, -ium , <i>F.</i> , valley

EXERCISES

523. 1. Cum magnus numerus militum in oppidō esset, hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt. 2. Ariovistus magnam multitudinem Germānōrum trādūxerat. 3. Cum iniūriæ hostium gravēs sint, auxilium tuum petimus. 4. Quod onus armōrum magnum erat, nostrī vix flūmen trānsiērunt. 5. Huic puerō persuādēre potes ut domī maneat. 6. Eō diē omnēs ordinēs aderant. 7. Hoc flūmen per magnam vallem fluit, et multīs locīs trānsītur.

SUBMISSION OF THE REMI

Dixērunt sē parātōs esse obsidēs dare et Rōmānōs frūmentō iuvāre. Dē hīs rēbus quæ apud Belgās fiēbant, et dē numerō quem quæque civitās ad hoc bellum pollicita erat Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt. Caesar cīs liberaliter respondit et obsidēs eōrum accēpit. Diviciācum Haeduum hortātus est ut cōpiæ Haeduōrum in finēs Belgārum dūcerentur.

524. 1. Since Ariovistus remained in camp, Caesar led back his forces to the town. 2. Since the scouts are not present, we shall send three soldiers. 3. A multitude of Gauls and Germans were killed in flight. 4. The road was so narrow that a few could defend it. 5. When the first ranks had crossed, the rest followed at once.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **Germānōrum** in sentence 2, and of **puerō** in sentence 5, 523. (2) Explain the case of **diē** in sentence 6, 523. (3) Explain the mood of **esset** in sentence 1, 523. (4) Give a synopsis of **adsum** in the third person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive. (5) Give the genitive plural of **ordō** and **vallēs**.

nōmine (366) Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id Belgae magnō impetū oppugnāre coepērunt.

529. 1. Although the town is large, still a few soldiers can defend it. 2. This man wishes to live in the city. 3. Although the river was not deep, the legion advanced slowly. 4. The centurions could not persuade the soldiers to cross (470) the ditch. 5. The Germans wish to cross the Rhine.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the derivation of the English words *extreme*, *tardy*, and *proposition*. (2) Give the Latin adjective from which the noun *difficultās* is derived. (3) Explain the case of *homini* in sentence 5, 528. (4) Give the principal parts of *volēbant* and *cōfidāmus*. (5) Explain the mood of *cōnfideret* in sentence 5, 528.

LESSON XC

CONJUGATION OF *NŌLŌ*: CLAUSES OF FEAR

CONJUGATION OF *NŌLŌ*

530. The verb *nōlō* is a compound of *volō* and *nōn*. Its forms will be found in the Appendix, section 36.

CONSTRUCTIONS WITH EXPRESSIONS OF FEAR

531. Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by *nē*, meaning *that*, or *ut*, meaning *that not*.

Verēbantur nē exercitus noster in Galliā manēret, *they feared that our army would remain in Gaul.*

Timeō ut sē fortiter dēfendant, *I fear that they will not defend themselves bravely.*

a. The English future tense depending on a word or phrase of fear in the present tense is translated by the present subjunctive.

532.

VOCABULARY

aedificium , -i, N., building, house	Iccius , -i, M., Iccius, a chief of the Remi
dēdō , -ere, dēdidi , dēditum , give up, yield, surrender	nōlō , nōlle , nōlui , not wish, be unwilling
dēpopulor , -āri, dēpopulātus sum, lay waste	paulisper , <i>adv.</i> , a little while propinquus , -a, -um, near

EXERCISES

533. 1. Labiēnus veritus est nē hostēs flūmen trānsīrent.
2. Belgae, quī obsidēs mittere nōlēbant, paulisper restitē-
runt. 3. Verēmur nē aedificia incendantur. 4. Gallī timē-
bant ut sē dēfendere possent. 5. Cum aedificia vicōsque
trāns Rhēnum habērent, eō redīre volēbant. 6. Iccius sē
hostibus dēdere nōluit.

THE DEFENSE OF BIBRAX

Oppidānī vix sē dēfendēbant. Iccius quī oppidō praefuit
nūntiōs ad Caesarem mīsīt quī auxilium peterent. Dixit sē
nōn posse diūtius sustinēre. Cum Caesar haec cognōvisset.
auxilium statim mīsīt. Hostēs ab oppidō discessērunt sed
agrōs Rēmōrum dēpopulātī sunt et multa aedificia vicōsque
incendērunt. Ad castra Caesaris contendērunt et sua castra
in locō propinquō posuērunt.

534. 1. We fear that the town may be captured. 2. The
army was unwilling to advance. 3. The Romans feared that
the enemy would lay waste the province. 4. The Haeduans
were unwilling to furnish the grain which they had promised.
5. We feared that the messenger would not come.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) State the difference between the use of conjunctions in purpose
clauses and in clauses of fear. (2) Point out the difference between
the forms of negative clauses of purpose and of negative clauses of
result. (3) Name the three kinds of **cum** clauses, giving the meaning
of **cum** with each. (4) State what tenses of the subjunctive are used
with **cum** meaning *when*.

EIGHTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

535.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aedificium, -ī, N.	adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus	
difficultās, -tātis, F.	arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum	
libertās, -tātis, F.	cōnfidō, -ere, cōnfisus sum	
onus, oneris, N.	coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum	
ōrdō, ordinis, M.	dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum	
pābulum, -ī, N.	dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum	
pecūnia, -ae, F.	dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum	
regiō, -ōnis, F.	fīō, fierī, factus sum	
salūs, salūtis, F.	mereor, -ērī, meritus sum	
servitūs, -tūtis, F.	nōlō, nōlle, nōluī	
tergum, -ī, N.	occidō, -ere, occidī, occisum	
uxor, uxōris, F.	perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, perfectum	
vallēs, vallis, F.	praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectum	
vesper, vespērī, M.	premō, -ere, pressī, pressum	
citerior, citerius	prōpōnō, -ere, prōposuī, prōpositum	
dexter, -tra, -trum	quaerō, -ere, quaesīvi, quaesitum	
extrēmus, -a, -um	redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāctum	
firmus, -a, -um	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scitum	
frūmentārius, -a, -um	vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	
gravis, grave	volō, velle, voluī	
idōneus, -a, -um	bene	tam
incolumis, incolume	comminus	tardē
propinquus, -a, -um	dēmum	undique
sinister, -tra, -trum	liberāliter	cum
tantus, -a, -um	minimē	nam
ulterior, ulterius	paulisper	ubi
		ob

536.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

certain	merit	tardy
difficulty	ordinal	ulterior
extreme	propinquity	valley
grave	propose	volition

LESSON XCI

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE: DATIVE OF AGENT

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

537. The Latin verb has a future passive participle, formed on the present stem, with the endings **-ndus**, **-nda**, and **-ndum**.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
amandus, -a, -um	monendus	dūcendus capiendus	audiendus

a. This participle refers to something that is to be done or ought to be done.

Homō monendus est, *the man is to be (must be) warned.*

THE DATIVE OF AGENT

538. With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly indicated by the dative.

Homō frātrī monendus est, *the man must be warned by his brother.*

a. In translating expressions of obligation or necessity into Latin with this construction it is often necessary to change the verb from the active to the passive.

We must send help (help must be sent by us), **auxilium nobīs mittendum est.**

539.

VOCABULARY

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day
fortūna, -ae, *F.*, fortune
opiniō, **opiniōnis**, *F.*, belief,
 expectation
rēgīna, -ae, *F.*, queen

sōl, **sōlis**, *M.*, the sun
supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī,
 -sessum, refrain from
umquam, *adv.*, ever (*used*
with negatives)

EXERCISES

540. 1. Caesarī aciēs instruenda est. 2. Castra militibus dēfendenda sunt. 3. Ōlim fortūna eius cīvitātis melior erat quod cīvēs meliōrēs habēbat. 4. Rēmī verēbantur nē oppidum caperētur. 5. Domum redire nōn vult. 6. Auxilium nōbīs statim ferendum est. 7. Eō diē iter nostrum per silvam magnam fuit neque sōlem vīdimus. 8. Rēx et rēgina fūgērunt neque umquam ad urbem rediērunt.

BATTLE AT THE AISNE

Primō Caesar propter multitudinem hostium et propter opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēbat. Equitēs eius autem cum equitibus Belgārum cotīdiē proeliō contendēbant. Cum ipse vīdisset Rōmānōs nōn minus fortēs esse, (in) locō idōneō aciem instrūxit. Hostēs item cōpiās suās instrūxērunt. Sed eō diē proelium nōn commissum est. Posterō diē Belgae ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt et trānsire cōnātī sunt. Sed multis interfectīs repulsī sunt.

541. 1. The army ought to cross the river (the river ought to be crossed, *etc.*). 2. The centurion ought to lead back the soldiers to camp. 3. No one ought to be sent into danger by the leader. 4. The enemy led out their army every day, but they did not begin battle. 5. The towns of our allies ought not to be burned by the legion.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **militibus** in sentence 2, and of **nōbīs** in sentence 6, 540. (2) Give the future active and the future passive participles of **postulō**, **habēō**, **dicō**, and **mūniō**. (3) Give a synopsis of **volō** in the third person singular of the indicative and the subjunctive. (4) Give a synopsis of **nōlō** in the second person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive. (5) Explain the mood of **caperētur** in sentence 4, 540.

LESSON XCII

CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*: GENITIVE OF OBJECTTHE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*

542. The verb *mālō*, *prefer*, is a compound of *magis* and *volō*. Its forms will be found in the Appendix, section 36.

Mālō has no imperatives or participles.

THE GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

543. The verbs *meminī* and *reminiscor*, *remember*, and *obliviscor*, *forget*, frequently take a noun in the genitive as object. But if the object is a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

544.

VOCABULARY

<i>ēgredior</i> , <i>ēgredi</i> , <i>ēgressus</i>	<i>obliviscor</i> , <i>oblivisci</i> , <i>oblitus</i>
sum, set out, depart from	sum, forget
<i>mālō</i> , <i>mālle</i> , <i>māluī</i> , <i>prefer</i>	<i>pristinus</i> , -a, -um, former,
<i>meminī</i> , <i>meminisse</i> , <i>defective</i>	old-time
<i>verb</i> , remember (<i>the perfect is translated as present, the past perfect as past, and the future perfect as future</i>)	<i>reminiscor</i> , <i>reminisci</i> , <i>remember</i> , recall
	<i>secundus</i> , -a, -um, second
	<i>vigilia</i> , -ae, F., watch (<i>one fourth of the night</i>)

EXERCISES

545. 1. Caesar veterum iniuriarum Helvetiorum reminiscēbatur. 2. Pristinæ virtutis eorum nōn oblitus est. 3. Hās condiōnēs pācis nōn accēperunt quod in libertate manēre mālēbant. 4. Domō exīre māvult quod numquam domī contentus fuit. 5. Semper periculōrum eius bellī meminērō. 6. Cōpiæ instruendæ sunt et proelium commitendum est.

THE BELGIANS DISPERSE

Cum Belgae magnam cōpiam rei frūmentāriae nōn habērent, in eō locō nōn diū remanēre poterant. Itaque conciliō convocātō, domum redīre cōstituērunt. Secundā vigiliā castris ēgressī sunt. Cum quisque primum locum itineris peteret, fēcērunt ut Rōmānī eōs fugere exīstimārent.

546. 1. The Romans remembered the victory of the Helvetians. 2. On that day Caesar preferred to refrain from battle. 3. Labienus did not forget the flight of the cavalry of the Gauls. 4. The Belgians remembered the liberty in which their fathers had lived (remained). 5. The soldiers seemed to fear the Germans.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō**, in the present indicative and the present subjunctive. (2) Give the future passive participles of **ēgredior** and **convocō**. (3) Explain the case of **virtūtis** in sentence 2, and of **domō** in sentence 4, **545**. (4) Conjugate **ēgredior** and **obliviscor** in the present indicative. (5) Conjugate **memini** in the perfect subjunctive.

LESSON XCIII

THE SUPINE: PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

THE SUPINE

547. The Supine is a verbal noun with only two case forms, the accusative and the ablative of the singular number. The accusative ends in **-um** and the ablative in **-ū**.

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portātum	monitum	ductum	captum	audītum
portātū	monitū	ductū	captū	audītū

a. The accusative of the supine may be used to express purpose in a clause in which the finite verb expresses motion.

Lēgātōs pācem petitum misērunt, they sent envoys to ask peace.

b. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

Optimum factū, best to do (the best thing to do).

REVIEW OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

548. a. Place to Which is regularly expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**.

b. Place Where is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in**.

c. Place from Which is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

d. With names of towns or small islands, and with **domus**, Place to Which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, and Place from Which by the ablative without a preposition.

e. With names of towns and small islands, and with **domus**, Place Where is expressed by the locative, which in the singular of the first and second declensions is identical with the genitive; with other words it is identical with the ablative.

f. The locative of **domus** is **domī**. A few words, among which are **locus** and **pars**, may omit the preposition in expressing Place Where, especially if modified by an adjective.

549.

VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis , <i>N.</i> , line, column (<i>of an army</i>)	Noviodūnum, -ī , <i>N.</i> , Noviodu- num, <i>a town of Gaul</i>
cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum , spare, protect	novissimus, -a, -um (<i>superla- tive of novus</i>), last; rear
incrēdibilis, -e , incredible, ex- traordinary	subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow, follow closely
moror, -ārī, morātus sum , delay	Suessiōnēs, -um , <i>M. pl.</i> , the Suessiones, <i>a tribe of Gaul</i>

EXERCISES

550. 1. Haedui ad Caesarem auxilium rogātum vēnērunt. 2. Id facillimum est factū. 3. Omnēs quī arma trādidērunt ab eō cōservātī sunt. 4. Proximā nocte domum vēnērunt et paulisper domī mānsērunt. 5. Domō proficīscī volēbant quod numquam contentī fuerant. 6. Caesar Noviodūnī nōn diū morātus est. 7. In eā insulā magnus numerus equōrum erat. 8. Incrēdibilī celeritatē flūmen trānsiērunt.

THE ROMANS PURSUE

Primā lūce Caesar omnem equitātum mīsit quī novissimum agmen morārētur. Labiēnum cum tribus legiōnibus subsequī iussit. Hae magnam multitudinem hostium fugientium concidērunt. Caesar exercitum in finēs Suessiōnum dūxit quī Rēmīs proximī sunt. Suessiōnēs in oppidum Noviodūnum

convēnērunt sed cum Caesar omnia comparāvisset lēgātōs pācem petītum mīserunt.

551. 1. Those who have returned home ought to be protected. 2. The Belgians set out for home in the second watch. 3. Iccius sent men to ask aid. 4. Some will remain at home, others will set out for the city. 5. This is the best thing to do (is best to do). 6. The courage of these men is incredible.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline **domus**. (2) Give a synopsis of **moror** in the third person singular of the indicative and the subjunctive. (3) Give a synopsis of **subsequor** in the third person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive. (4) Give all the infinitives and all the participles of **cōnservō**. (5) Give the supines of **videō** and **dīcō**.



CIRCUS MAXIMUS

LESSON XCIV

THE GERUND

552. The Gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension. It is in the neuter gender, and its only forms are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases of the singular number. Its nominative is supplied by the infinitive. Its declension is as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
GEN.	portandī	monendī	dūcendī	audiendī
DAT.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
ACC.	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
ABL.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō

a. The gerund of **capiō** is declined like the gerund of **audiō**.

553. (1) The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with an adjective or a noun. With the ablative **causā** it expresses purpose.

Cupidus bellandī, *desirous of engaging in war.*

Resistendī causā, *for the sake (purpose) of resisting.*

(2) The dative of the gerund is little used.

(3) The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition **ad** to express purpose.

Ad oppugnandum, *for attacking, to attack.*

(4) The ablative may be used to express means or cause, or as the object of the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, or **in**.

pugnandō, *by fighting.*

in quaerendō, *on inquiring.*

a. The gerund when used as the object of a preposition cannot have an object. For expressions of this kind the Latin employs a different construction.



VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

554.

VOCABULARY

accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessum, approach (*usually with ad and the accusative*)

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambiani, *a tribe of Gaul*

bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, engage in war, carry on war

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Bellovaci, *a tribe of Gaul*

cohors, cohortis, f., cohort, one of the ten divisions of the legion

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond of

pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, hold out

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, spare (*with dative*)

EXERCISES

555. 1. Ariovistus cupidus bellandī erat. 2. Spem amīcōs videndī nōn habēbam. 3. Pācem petendī causā vērunt. 4. Ad hoc oppidum cum cohortibus accēdet. 5. Omnia ad proficiscendum parāvērunt. 6. In quaerendō Caesar reperit arma trādita esse.

SURRENDER OF THE BELLOVACI

Obsidibus acceptis Caesar eis pepercit et in finēs Bellovacōrum profectus est. Cum ad oppidum eōrum accessisset, puerī fēminaeque ex mūrō manūs pandērunt, et pācem implōrāvērunt. Prō his Dīviciācus Haeduus locūtus est. Caesar eis quoque pepercit sed magnum numerum obsidum poposcit. His datīs et armīs trāditīs ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit quī sē sine morā dēdidērunt.

556. 1. They have hope of capturing the city. 2. The enemy prepared everything for making an attack (for attacking). 3. I have this army for the purpose of carrying on war. 4. The Belgians preferred to return home. 5. You cannot help your friend by pleading (**implōrāre**). 6. Caesar protected the Bellovaci because he thought this was best (to do).

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the gerunds in sentences 1-6, 555. (2) Give the gerunds of **habēō** and **moror**. (3) Give the past infinitives, active and passive, of **dēdō**. (4) Explain the case of **obsidibus** and of **eis**, line 5, 555. (5) Give the principal parts of **patior** and of **pandō**.

LESSON XCV

THE GERUNDIVE: ORDINAL NUMERALS

557. The future passive participle of a transitive verb is often used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in phrases which are equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.¹

Spēs urbis capiendae. The meaning is the same as **Spēs urbem capiendī**, *hope of capturing the city*.

The future passive participle when thus used is called the Gerundive. The gerundive may be used in either number and in any case to agree with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

a. Since the gerund cannot stand as the object of a preposition and at the same time govern an object, gerundive phrases are frequently used with the forms of transitive verbs. The English translation of such phrases is the same as if the gerundive were a gerund having as its object the word with which the gerundive agrees.

b. The case uses of the gerundive construction are in general the same as those of the gerund.

Cupidus oppidī expugnandī, *desirous of storming the town*.

Auxili ferendī causā, *for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid*.

Ad eas res cōficiendās, *for accomplishing these things*.

Dē auxiliō mittendō, *about (concerning) sending aid*.

Lapidibus portandis, *by carrying stones*.

¹ The gerundive construction was not a substitute for the gerund in the thought of the Romans, but was probably the usage from which the gerund was derived.

558. The following distinctions between the gerund and gerundive are to be observed:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
A noun	A participle
Active in meaning	Passive
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers

ORDINAL NUMERALS

559. The first twenty ordinals are as follows:

<i>prīmus</i> , <i>first</i>	<i>ūndecimus</i> , <i>eleventh</i>
<i>secundus</i> , <i>second</i>	<i>duodecimus</i> , <i>twelfth</i>
<i>tertius</i> , <i>third</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i> , <i>thirteenth</i>
<i>quārtus</i> , <i>fourth</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i> , <i>fourteenth</i>
<i>quīntus</i> , <i>fifth</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i> , <i>fifteenth</i>
<i>sextus</i> , <i>sixth</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i> , <i>sixteenth</i>
<i>septimus</i> , <i>seventh</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i> , <i>seventeenth</i>
<i>octāvus</i> , <i>eighth</i>	<i>duodēvicēsīmus</i> , <i>eighteenth</i>
<i>nōnus</i> , <i>ninth</i>	<i>ūndēvicēsīmus</i> , <i>nineteenth</i>
<i>decimus</i> , <i>tenth</i>	<i>vicēsīmus</i> , <i>twentieth</i>

a. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Compound ordinals, such as *tertius decimus*, have both parts declined.

560.

VOCABULARY

<i>accidō</i> , -ere, <i>accidi</i> , happen	<i>Sabis</i> , <i>Sabis</i> , <i>m.</i> , the Sambre,
<i>experior</i> , -īri, <i>expertus sum</i> ,	<i>a river of Gaul</i>
try	<i>tempestās</i> , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , storm,
<i>Nervii</i> , -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , the	tempest
<i>Nervii</i> , <i>a tribe of Belgians</i>	<i>ūnā</i> , <i>adv.</i> , together, at the
<i>plēnus</i> , -a, -um, full	same time

EXERCISES

561. 1. Hostēs quī trāns flūmen cōnsēdērunt spem oppidi capiendī habent. 2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēlēctus est. 3. Lapidibus iaciendīs multōs vulnerāvērunt. 4. Pācis petendae causā lēgātōs mīsī. 5. Accidit ut lūna plēna esset. 6. Tempestātēs tantae erant ut proficīscī nōn possēmus.

THE NERVII PREPARE FOR WAR

Proximī hīs erant Nervīi quī maximē ferī inter eōs exīstīmābantur. Hī trāns Sabim cōnsēderant ibique adventum Rōmānōrum exspectābant. Ūnā cum hīs erant duae gentēs finitimae quae eandem fortūnam bellī experīrī volēbant. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar centuriōnēs explōrātōrēsque praemisit quī locum castrīs (196) dēligerent.

562. 1. The cohort was left in the town for the purpose of defending the townspeople. 2. We shall send a legion to capture the town (*ad with gerundive phrase*). 3. By throwing stones we drove back the enemy who were crossing the river. 4. Orgetorix will be chosen to accomplish these things. 5. The Nervii set out that they might try the fortune of war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

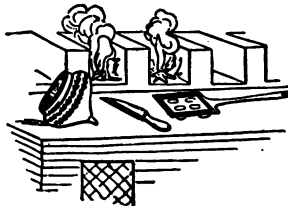
(1) Point out the gerundives in 561. (2) Give the gerunds of **capiō**. (3) State whether **capiendī** in sentence 1, 561, is a gerund or a gerundive, and give proof. (4) Give a synopsis of **iaciō** in the third person plural. (5) Conjugate **possum** in the past indicative and the past subjunctive.

NINETEENTH REVIEW LESSON

563. (1) The conjugation of *fiō*.
(2) The conjugation of *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
(3) Future passive participles.
(4) The supine.
(5) The gerund.
(6) The gerundive.
(7) The genitive of material.
(8) The genitive with verbs of remembering and forgetting.
(9) The dative of agent.
(10) *cum* descriptive clauses.
(11) *cum* causal clauses.
(12) *cum* adversative clauses.
(13) Clauses of fear.

564. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

accession	fortune	reminiscence
accident	incredible	second
conservation	moratorium	solar
cupidity	oblivion	subsequent
egress	opinion	tempest
experiment	pristine	vigil



ROMAN KITCHEN RANGE

LESSON XCVI

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES: NEGATIVE COMMANDS

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES

565. The Latin verb has four participles, the present active, the past passive, and the future, active and passive.

PRESENT		PAST		FUTURE	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
portāns	—	—	portātus	portātūrus	portandus
monēns	—	—	monitus	monitūrus	monendus
dūcēns	—	—	ductus	ductūrus	dūcendus
capiēns	—	—	captus	captūrus	capiendus
audiēns	—	—	auditus	auditūrus	audiendus

a. In English there is a present passive participle, *being carried*, etc., and a past active participle, *having carried*, etc. These two participles are lacking in the Latin verb.

b. Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs: **cōnāns, cōnātus, cōnātūrus, cōnandus**, etc. The past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning, but sometimes it is passive. The sense of the sentence in which the participle stands will make it possible to decide in which voice it is used.

c. The present participle is declined as an adjective of the third declension: **portāns, portantis**, etc. The other participles are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions: **portātus, -a, -um**, etc.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

566. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are frequently expressed by the imperative of **nōlō** (**nōlī, nōlīte**), followed by the infinitive of the verb expressing the act forbidden: **Nōlī eum iuvāre**, *do not help him*.

567.

VOCABULARY

efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectum,	lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, remain
bring about	concealed
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, put to	nesciō, -ire, -ivī, not know
flight, rout	silvestris, -tre, wooded, forest
expeditus, -a, -um, unim-	covered
peded, ready for action	vergō, -ere, slope

EXERCISES

568. 1. Belgae crēdidērunt Rōmānōs in Galliā remanēre quod eam regiōnem in servitūtem redigere vellent. 2. Nōlī huic puerō pecūniam dare. 3. Nesciō ubi castra posita sint. 4. Hostēs, flūmen trānsire cōnātī, fugātī sunt. 5. Nōlī exercitum in periculum dūcere. 6. Haec rēs effēcīt ut Germānī discēdere nōllent. 7. Nōlite hostium impetum timēre.

POSITION OF THE ARMIES

Locum castris dēlēgērunt in colle quī ad flūmen Sabim vergēbat. Trāns id flūmen alter collis erat cuius pars magna erat silvestris. In his silvīs hostēs latēbant. Altitudō flūminis nōn magna erat. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequitur omnibus cōpiīs. Quod hostibus appropinquābat duās legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat.

569. 1. We shall find out who is in the town. 2. The boy said that his brother who had been in the war had been wounded. 3. The Romans did not know in what place the Nervii were lurking. 4. Having promised aid, we returned to Gaul. 5. Do not receive money from this man.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Name a Latin noun with which **servitūs** is connected in derivation. (2) Give the noun from which **silvestris** is derived. (3) Give an English word which is connected in derivation with **pecūnia**. (4) Explain the mood of **vellent** in sentence 1, 568. (5) Explain the mood of **sint** in sentence 3, 568. (6) Give the principal parts of **dō, crēdō, dēdō, and trādō**.

LESSON XCVII

CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS: NON-COMMITTAL
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

570. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence, the subordinate clause of which is introduced by *if*. The subordinate clause is called the Condition, the main clause is called the Conclusion.

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES¹

571. In Latin, a conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false regularly has both verbs in the indicative.

Sī puer domī est, māter laeta est, *if the boy is at home,
his mother is glad.*

**Sī hostēs flūmen trānsiērunt, nostrī pontem nōn
dēfendērunt,** *if the enemy have crossed the river,
our men did not defend the bridge.*

a. Sometimes an imperative or a subjunctive of desire is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this kind instead of an indicative.

Sī pācem cupitis, arma trādite, *if you desire peace.
surrender your arms.*

b. A non-committal conditional sentence referring to future time is commonly called a Future More Vivid conditional sentence. The verb of its conditional clause is usually translated by an English present tense, but the Latin sentence has the verb of the condition as well as of the conclusion in the future or future perfect.

¹ Conditional sentences of this type are sometimes called *neutral* conditional sentences.

572.

VOCABULARY

claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum,	prōvolō, -āre, -āvi, rush forth,
close	fly forth
nisi, conj., if not, unless	subitō, adv., suddenly
pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsum,	trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus
rout, put to flight	sum, cross

EXERCISES

573. 1. Si hostēs in silvā latent, periculum est. 2. Si Galli flūmen trānsgridiuntur, periculum nostrum magnum est. 3. Peditēs ad proelium committendum prōcessērunt. 4. Equitātus proelī committendī causā praemissus est. 5. Si omnēs legiōnēs in castris sunt, portās claudite. 6. Nisi peditēs pervenient, hostēs flūmen trānsgridientur.

BEGINNING OF THE BATTLE

Equitēs Rōmānī flūmen trānsgressi cum equitātū hostium proelium commiserunt. Hostēs ad silvās sē recēpērunt ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Interim sex legiōnēs quae vēnerant castra mūnīre coepērunt. Tum hostēs quī in silvis latēbant subitō prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His pulsīs flūmen trānsiērunt et incrēdibilī celeritāte ad castra contendērunt.

574. 1. If the cavalry are crossing the river, the enemy do not see them. 2. The legion set out for the purpose of burning the town. 3. Caesar did not think the enemy would cross the river. 4. If the enemy are collecting an army, they wish to wage war. 5. We do not know in what place the Belgians are lurking.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the meaning and the derivation of the English words *latent* and *transgress*. (2) Give the rules for the use of moods and tenses in indirect discourse. (3) State what the difference is between the English and the Latin usage in regard to conjunctions introducing indirect discourse. (4) Give the method of expressing negative commands. (5) Give the past and future infinitives of **trānsgridior**.

LESSON XCVIII

**CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT:
REVIEW OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS****CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, CONTRARY TO FACT**

575. A conditional sentence which implies by its form that the condition is not true and that the actual situation is not that which is referred to in the conclusion is called a conditional sentence Contrary to Fact.

If he had seen the danger, he would have avoided it
(implying that he did not see the danger and that he did not avoid it).

576. In Latin, a conditional sentence contrary to fact has its verbs in the past or the past perfect subjunctive; the past to express present time, and the past perfect to express past time.

Si fortēs militēs habērēmus, in periculō nōn essēmus,
if we had brave soldiers, we should not be in danger.

Si fortēs militēs habuissēmus, in periculō nōn fuissēmus,
if we had had brave soldiers, we should not have been in danger.

REVIEW OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

577. The following prepositions used in this book always have their objects in the ablative case: **ā (ab), dē, ē (ex), cum, prō, sine.**

In phrases denoting the place toward which motion is directed, **in** and **sub** have their objects in the accusative case; in phrases denoting the place in which something exists or some act is done, they have their objects in the ablative case.

All other prepositions used in this book have their objects in the accusative case.

578.

VOCABULARY

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do, carry on	necessitās, -tātis, F., necessity, urgency
exercitātus, -a, -um, trained	ratio, ratiōnis, F., theory, reason
incursus, -ūs, M., attack	
militāris, -e, military; rēs	superior, superius, compar.
militāris, military science, warfare	adj., higher, preceding, previous



VIEW ON THE APPIAN WAY

EXERCISES

579. 1. Si hostēs in silvā latērent, periculum esset. 2. Si peditēs sē recēpissent, castra capta essent. 3. Si omnēs legiōnēs in castris essent, nōn timērēmus. 4. Si lēgātī Caesaris imperia exspectāvissent, exercitus repulsus esset. 5. Hic locus militibus dēfendendus est.

ROMAN DISCIPLINE

Caesari omnia unō tempore agenda erant. Incursus hostium magnam partem eārum rerum impediēbat quās ratio rei militāris postulābat. Militēs autem superiōribus proeliis exercitātī fuerant, et lēgātī quī legiōnibus praeerant imperium Caesaris nōn exspectāvērunt. Itaque exercitus instrūctus est magis ut (as) necessitās temporis (postulābat) quam ut ratio rei militāris postulābat.

580. 1. If the soldiers had fortified the camp, the enemy would not have made an attack. 2. If the soldier had set out from the camp, he would have been captured. 3. If the enemy were not laying waste our fields, we should not be asking aid of (from) the Romans. 4. If you are brave soldiers, defend the camp. 5. If the man were not lazy, he would be working today.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Name the class of conditional sentences to which sentences 1, 2, and 3, 579, belong. (2) Point out the verb of the conclusion in each of these three sentences. (3) Explain the use of the tenses of the verbs in sentence 3, 579. (4) Explain the case of *militibus* in sentence 5 and of *Caesari*, line 6, 579.

LESSON XCIX

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: *ISTE*

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

581. A conditional sentence which implies doubt on the part of the speaker or writer as to the fulfillment of the condition, and which has as its conclusion a verb denoting an act as conceivable or imaginable, is called a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence. Its verbs stand in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

Sī hostem videat, fugiat, if he should see the enemy, he would flee.

a. The perfect is used in the place of the present when the completion of the act is prominent in thought.

b. The verbs of a future more vivid conditional sentence are translated with the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*, or (in the condition) by the present tense. The verbs of a future less vivid conditional sentence are translated with *should* and *would*.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ISTE*

582. Besides *hic*, *ille*, and *is*, there is another demonstrative, *iste*, translated *that of yours*, or simply *that*. It is less frequently used than the others and commonly refers to something associated with the person addressed. It is declined like *ille*.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
iste	ista	istud
istīus	istīus	istīus, etc.

a. *Iste* is sometimes used to express contempt.

583.

VOCABULARY

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect, compel	revertor, reverti, reverti, re- versum, return (<i>deponent</i> <i>in present system</i>)
duodecimus, -a, -um, twelfth	septimus, -a, -um, seventh
nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, strip, leave unprotected	spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hope

EXERCISES

584. 1. Istud dōnum parvum esse vidētur. 2. Si amīcus meus essēs, nōn haec dicerēs. 3. Tantus erat numerus Germānōrum ut Gallī quī eam regiōnem incolēbant eīs resistere nōn possent. 4. Si discessissent, Caesar eōs secūtus esset. 5. Magnae cōpiae coactae sunt quod hostēs appropinquābant. 6. Militēs spērānt lēgātum auxilium missūrum esse.¹

¹ Spērō is followed by indirect discourse.

THE NERVII IN THE ROMAN CAMP

Pars hostium ab Rōmānīs repulsa statim fūgit. Sed cum castra Rōmāna nūdāta essent, magnus numerus Nerviorum ad eum locum contendit. Eō tempore equitēs Rōmānī in castra sē recipiēbant, sed, hostibus vīsīs in castris, aliam in partem fugam petiērunt. Interim duodecima legiō et septima ab hostibus premēbantur.

585. 1. They fled so swiftly that the legion which had crossed the river did not make an attack. 2. Since the scouts who had been sent ahead had not seen the enemy, the soldiers did not fear danger. 3. If the town had been captured, many would have been killed. 4. If the legion should cross the river, the cavalry would flee.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the mood of **possent** in sentence 3, 584. (2) State what form of conditional sentences is illustrated by 2 and 4, 584. (3) Conjugate **revertor** in the present indicative and the perfect indicative.

LESSON C

FUTURE IMPERATIVE: SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

586. The forms of the future imperative are found in the second and third persons. They are as follows:

ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
2. portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	audītō
3. portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	audītō
PLURAL				
2. portātōte	monētōte	mittitōte	capitōte	audītōte
3. portantō	monentō	mittuntō	capiantō	audiuntō

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

2. portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	audītor
3. portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	audītor

PLURAL

2. [Lacking]	_____	_____	_____	_____
3. portantor	monentor	mittuntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

a. The future imperative is used when there is a clear reference to future time indicated by an adverb or other expression of time. It is translated *thou shalt carry, he shall carry, or let him carry, etc.*

b. The verbs **meminī** and **sciō** regularly (and **habeō** occasionally) use the future imperative instead of the present.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

587. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

Ita ācriter pugnāvērunt ut omnēs qui in proeliō essent vulnerārentur, they fought so fiercely that all who were in the battle were wounded.

588.

VOCABULARY

Atuatucī, -ōrum, m. pl., the	paulum, adv., a little, some-
Atuatuci, a tribe of the	what
Belgians	rōbur, -oris, m., oak, strength
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum,	supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
urge, encourage	be left, survive
dimitto, -ere, dimisi, dimis-	tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
sum, send away, dismiss	hinder, check

EXERCISES

589. 1. Mementōte hanc patriam meam esse. 2. Scītō mē amīcum eius hominis semper fuisse. 3. Gallī tempētātēs nōn timēbant quod nāvēs eōrum ex rōbore factae sunt. 4. Equitēs dīmissī sunt sed legiōnēs in hībernīs manent. 5. Signum datum est ut eī quī profectī essent reverterentur.

END OF THE BATTLE

Tum Caesar scūtum cēpit et ipse in prīmam aciem prōcessit. Centuriōnēs militēsque cohortātus est. Eius adventus spem militibus intulit et impetus hostium paulum tardātus est. Eōdem tempore Labiēnus, quī advēnerat, auxilium misit et omnēs hostēs fugātī sunt. . Postea eī quī supererant sē dēdidērunt. Eō bellō cōfectō Atuatuī quī socii Nerviorum fuerant Caesarī resistere cōnātī sunt. Sed oppidum eōrum captum est et paene omnēs servi factī sunt. Tum Caesar legiōnēs in hībernīs reliquit atque in Ītaliā profectus est.

590. 1. They came to the camp because they wished to beg for peace. 2. We sent them away because we did not trust them (*dative*). 3. Remember that your fathers were brave men. 4. Be assured (know) that the danger is not great.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **supersum** in the present and the past subjunctive. (2) Mention two other compounds of **sum**. (3) Give the rule for the use of tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. (4) Give the future imperatives of **probō**, **videō**, and **mūnīō**. (5) Give all the imperatives, present and future, of **laudō**.

TWENTIETH REVIEW LESSON

591.

agmen, agminis, N.
 cohors, cohortis, F.
 incursus, -ūs, M.
 necessitās, -tātis, F.
 opīniō, -ōnis, F.
 ratiō, -ōnis, F.
 rōbur, rōboris, N.
 sōl, sōlis, M.
 tempestās, -tātis, F.
 vigilia, -ae, F.
 cupidus, -a, -um
 exercitātus, -a, -um
 incredibilis, -e
 militāris, -e
 plēnus, -a, -um
 prīstinus, -a, -um
 secundus, -a, -um
 silvestris, -e
 superior, superius
 cotidiē
 paulum
 subitō
 umquam
 ūnā
 nisi

VOCABULARY REVIEW

accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessum
 accidō, -ere, accidī
 agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
 attribuō, -ere, attribui, attribūtum
 claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum
 cōgō, -ere, cōēgī, cōāctum
 cohortor, -ārī, cohortātus sum
 cōnsīdo, -ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum
 efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
 ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum
 lateō, -ēre, -uī
 mālō, mālle, mālui
 meminī, meminisse
 moror, -ārī, morātus sum
 nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī
 oblivīscor, oblivīscī, oblītus sum
 parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum
 pandō, -ere, pandī, passum
 pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum
 reminīscor, reminīscī
 spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum
 supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus
 trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus sum
 vergō, vergere

592.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

act	expedite	retard
agent	latent	revert
close	necessity	superior
cogent	nude	transgress
efficient	rational	verge

EUTROPIUS' HISTORY OF ROME (SELECTIONS)

BOOK ONE

Romulus and the Founding of Rome

Rōmānum imperium, Rōmulō exōrdium habet, quī Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, filius et, quantum putātus est, Mārtis erat. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem exiguam in Palātīnō monte cōstituit, post Trōiae ex-cidium annō trecentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō quārtō. 5

Conditā cīvitatē, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit. Multitūdinem finitimōrum in cīvitatē recēpit, centum ex seniōribus lēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectutē. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent, invitāvit 10 ad spectāculum lūdōrum vicinās urbī Rōmae nātiōnēs atque cārum virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellis propter raptārum iniūriam Caenīnēsēs vicit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabinōs, Fidēnātēs, Vēientēs. Haec omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum ortā subitō tempestātē nōn com- 15 pāruisset, annō rēgnī tricēsīmō septimō ad deōs trānsisse crēditus est et cōsecrātus. Deinde Rōmae per quīnōs diēs senātōrēs imperāvērunt et hīs rēgnantibus annus ūnus complētus est.

Numa, the Peaceful King

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum 20 quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatī quam Rōmulus prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānis mōrēsque cōstituit, quī cōsuētūdine proeliōrum iam latrōnēs ac

sēmibarbarī putābantur, et annum dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs prius sine aliquā supputātiōne cōnfūsum, et infinita Rōmae sacra ac templa cōstituit. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsīmō et tertiō imperiī annō.

Tullus Hostilius, the Warrior

5 Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparāvit, Albānōs vicit, quī ab urbe Rōmā duodecimō miliārīō sunt, Vēientēs et Fidēnātēs, quōrum aliī sextō miliārīō absunt ab urbe Rōmā, aliī octāvō decimō, bellō superāvit, urbem ampliāvit adiectō Caeliō monte. Cū trīgintā et duōs
10 annōs rēgnāset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

Ancus Marcius. Expansion of Roman Power

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscepit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmīcāvit, Aventīnum montem cīvitatī adiēcīt et Iāniculum, apud ōstium Tiberis cīvitatē suprā mare sextō decimō miliārīō ab urbe Rōmā
15 condidit. Vicēsīmō et quārtō annō imperiī morbō periit.

Tarquin the Elder. Development of the City

Deinde rēgnum Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum senātōrum duplicāvit, circum Rōmae aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmānōs instituit, quī ad nostram memoriā permanent. Vicit idem etiam Sabinōs et nōn parum agrōrum
20 sublātum isdem urbis Rōmae territōriō iūnxit, primusque triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcīt et cloācās, Capitōlium inchoāvit. Tricēsīmō octāvō imperiī annō per Ancī filiōs occisus est, rēgis eius, cui ipse successerat.

Servius Tullius. Further Expansion

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex
25 nōbili fēminā, captivā tamen et ancillā. Hic quoque Sabinōs subēgit, montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Viminālem,

Ēsquilinum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circum mūrum dūxit. Primus omnium cēsum ōrdināvit, quī adhūc per orbem terrarum incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma omnibus in cēsum dēlātis habuit capita LXXXIII mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agris erant. Occisus est scelere 5 generī suī Tarquinī Superbī, filiū eius rēgis, cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquinius habēbat uxōrem.

Tarquin the Proud. End of the Kings

L. Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniam euntibus nōn longē ab urbe est, vicit, Gabiōs cīvitātem et Suessam Pōmētiam 10 subēgit, cum Tuscīs pācem fēcit et templum Iovī in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Postēā Ardeam oppugnāns, in octāvō decimō mīliariō ab urbe Rōmā positam cīvitātem, imperium perdidit. Cumque imperāset annōs quattuor et vīgintī cum uxōre et liberis suis fūgit. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est 15 per septem rēgēs annīs ducentīs quadrāgintā tribus, cum adhūc Rōma, ubi plūrimum, vix usque ad quīntum decimum mīliarium possidēret.

Beginning of the Republic

Hinc cōsulēs coepēre, prō ūnō rēge duo, hāc causā creātī, ut, sī ūnus malus esse voluisset, alter eum habēns 20 potestātem similem coērcēret. Et placuit nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis insolentiōrēs redderentur, sed cīvilēs semper essent, quī sē post annum scīrent futūrōs esse privātōs. Fuērunt igitur annō primō ab expulsīs rēgibus cōsulēs L. Iūnius 25 Brūtus, quī maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus Lucrētiaē. Sed Tarquiniō Collātīnō statim sublāta est dignitās. Placuerat enim, nē quisquam in urbe manēret, quī Tarquinius vocārētur. Ergō acceptō omnī patrimōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit et locō 30 ipsius factus est L. Valerius Pūblicola cōsul.

18. *his rēgnantibus*, under their rule.

21. *civitātī*, dative with *prōfuit*. Most compounds of *sum* take the dative.

22. *et*, correlative with *et* in line 1, p. 260, both . . . and. The first *et* may be omitted in translation.

Rōmānis, for the Romans, a dative of reference.

23. *cōnsuetūdine proeliōrum*, from their continual battles (from their custom of battles).

Page 260, l. 1. *in decem mēnsēs*, others say that Numa divided the year into twelve months.

2. *cōnfūsum*, agrees with *annum*.

3. *Morbō dēcessit*, died a natural death (died from illness); *morbō* is ablative of cause.

5. *Huic*, dative with a compound of *sub* (*successit*).

6. *duodecimō miliāriō*, twelve miles (at the twelfth milestone). The form of expression in Caesar, Cicero, or any other writer of the best period would have been *duodecim milia* (or *milibus*) *passuum*.

7. *quōrum alii . . . alii*, translate as if *quōrum* referred to the names of the towns instead of to their inhabitants: *one of which . . . the other*. A Latin writer of the best period would use *alterī . . . alterī*.

9. *adiectō Caeliō monte*, by adding the Caelian Hill.

10. *rēgnāasset*, contracted form of *rēgnāvisset*.

arsit, was consumed; from *ārdeō*, to burn, in intransitive sense.

11. *Numae ex filiā nepōs*, a grandson of Numa, the son of his daughter.

suscēpit imperium, succeeded to the throne.

13. *Iāniculum*, part of the object of *adiēcit*. The Janiculum is on the opposite side of the Tiber from the other hills and is not usually reckoned as one of the seven hills.

apud ōstium, the conjunction *et* is understood before *apud*, and also before *Aventinum* in line 12. Conjunctions are omitted more freely in Latin than in English.

14. *civitātem*, the name of the city was Ostia. It was the sea-port of Rome.

suprā mare, on the sea.

17. *circum* (noun), the Circus Maximus, an enclosure between the Palatine and the Aventine hills, for races and other sports.

18. *lūdōs Rōmānōs*, this was a particular celebration occurring in September of each year.

19. *idem*, translate simply *he* (subject of *vicit*). It is sometimes difficult to indicate in English the exact emphasis given by this word.

magister equitum factus est, quī dictātōrī obsequerētur. Dictātōr autem Rōmae primus fuit T. Larcus, magister equitum primus Sp. Cassius.

The Establishment of the Tribune

Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs sēditionem populus Rōmae fēcit, tamquam ā senātū atque cōsulibus premerētur. Tum et ipse sibi tribūnōs plēbis quasi propriōs iūdicēs et dēfēnsōrēs creāvit, per quōs contrā senātum et cōsulēs tūtus esse posset.

War with the Volscians

Sequentī annō Volscī contrā Rōmānōs bellum reparāvērunt, et victī aciē etiā Coriolōs cīvitātem, quam habēbant optimam, perdidērunt.

Octāvō decimō annō postquam rēgēs ēiectī erant, expulsus ex urbe Q. Mārcius, dux Rōmānus, quī Coriolōs cēperat, Volscōrum cīvitātem, ad ipsōs Volscōs contendit irātus et auxilia contrā Rōmānōs accēpit. Rōmānōs saepe vīcit, usque ad quīntum miliārium urbis accessit, oppugnātūrus etiā patriam suā, lēgātīs, quī pācem petēbant, repudiātīs, nisi ad eum māter Veturia et uxor Volumnia ex urbe vēnissent, quārum flētū et dēprecātiōne superātus remōvit exercitum. Atque hic secundus post Tarquiniū fuit, quī dux contrā patriam suam esset.

The Fabii and the War with Veii

C. Fabiō et L. Virgīniō cōsulibus trecentī nōbilēs hominēs, quī ex Fabiā familiā erant, contrā Vēientēs bellum sōli suscēpērunt, prōmittentēs senātui et populō per sē omne certāmen implendum. Itaque profectī, omnēs nōbilēs et quī singuli magnōrum exercituum ducēs esse dēberent, in proeliō concidērunt. Unus omnīnō super- fuit ex tantā familiā, quī propter aetātem puerilem dūci nōn potuerat ad pugnam. Post haec cēsus in urbe

L. Cornēlius Faustus, Sullae dictātōris filius. Contrā hōs commissō proeliō post multās dīmiciōnēs victor fuit Caesar. Catō, Scīpiō, Petrēius, Iuba ipsī sē occidērunt. Faustus, Sullae quondam dictātōris filius, Pompēi gener, ā
 5 Caesare interfectus est.

End of the Civil War

Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus quārtō sē cōn-
 sulem fēcit et statim ad Hispāniās est profectus, ubi Pom-
 pēi filiū, Cn. Pompēius et Sex. Pompēius, ingēns bellum
 praeparāverant. Multa proelia fuērunt, ultimum apud
 10 Mundam civitātem, in quō adeō Caesar paene victus est,
 ut fugientibus suis sē voluerit occidere, nē post tantam
 rei militāris glōriam in potestātem adulēsentium nātus
 annōs sex et quīnquāgintā venīret. Dēnique revocātis suis
 vicit. Ex Pompēi filiis maior occīsus est, minor fūgit.

Caesar the Ruler of Rome. His Death

15 Inde Caesar bellis civilibus tōtō orbe compositis Rōmam
 rediit. Agere insolentius coepit et contrā cōnsuētūdinem
 Rōmānae libertātis. Cum ergō et honōrēs ex suā voluntāte
 praestāret, quī ā populō antea dēferēbantur, nec senātui ad
 sē venienti adsurgeret aliaque rēgia ac paene tyrannica
 20 faceret, coniūrātum est in eum ā sexāgintā vel amplius
 senātōribus equitibusque Rōmānis. Praecipui fuērunt
 inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī ex eō genere Brūtī, quī primus
 Rōmae cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, et C. Cassius et
 Servilius Casca. Ergō Caesar, cum senātūs diē inter
 25 cēterōs venisset ad cūriam, tribus et vīginti vulneribus
 cōnfossus est.

NOTES

Eutropius was a Roman historian who wrote in the latter part of the fourth century A. D. His book, which was called *Breviarium ab Urbe Condita*, was a brief history of Rome from the founding of the city to the year 364 A. D.

Page 259, l. 1. *imperium, state* (literally *authority*).

qui Rhēae Silviae, etc., order for translation, qui erat filius Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, et (quantum putātus est) Mārtis.

2. quantum putātus est, as it was believed (literally, as he was thought).

3. decem et octō annōs nātus, at the age of eighteen years (literally, having been born eighteen years; annōs is accusative of duration of time).

4. Palātīnō monte, the Palatine Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome.

5. annō trecentēsīmō, etc., according to the common legend Rome was founded in the year 753 B. C. Some authorities give 754.

6. Conditā civitatē, after he had founded the city, when the city was founded (literally with the city founded, ablative absolute).

7. haec ferē ēgit, his further achievements were about as follows (he did about these things).

8. quōrum . . . ageret, by whose advice he should act in all matters (should do everything); a relative clause of purpose.

10. cum, since.

uxōrēs, object of habērent.

12. Commōtis bellis, when war broke out, ablative absolute.

propter raptārum infūriam, a genitive modifying the object of a preposition often stands between the preposition and the object.

14. Sabinōs, in apposition with the three proper names preceding. The towns whose inhabitants are referred to were Sabine towns. The other two towns (Fidenae and Veii) were Etruscan towns.

15. nōn comparuisset, had disappeared.

17. cōsecrātus (est), was deified.

Rōmae, locative case.

per quīnōs diēs, for five days each.

18. *his rēgnantibus*, under their rule.

21. *civitātī*, dative with *prōfuit*. Most compounds of *sum* take the dative.

22. *et*, correlative with *et* in line 1, p. 260, both . . . and. The first *et* may be omitted in translation.

Rōmānis, for the Romans, a dative of reference.

23. *cōsuētūdine proeliōrum*, from their continual battles (from their custom of battles).

Page 260, l. 1. *in decem mēnsēs*, others say that Numa divided the year into twelve months.

2. *cōfūsum*, agrees with *annum*.

3. *Morbō dēcessit*, died a natural death (died from illness); *morbō* is ablative of cause.

5. *Huic*, dative with a compound of *sub* (*successit*).

6. *duodecimō miliārīō*, twelve miles (at the twelfth milestone). The form of expression in Caesar, Cicero, or any other writer of the best period would have been *duodecim milia* (or *milibus*) *passuum*.

7. *quōrum alii . . . alii*, translate as if *quōrum* referred to the names of the towns instead of to their inhabitants: *one of which . . . the other*. A Latin writer of the best period would use *alterī . . . alterī*.

9. *adiectō Caeliō monte*, by adding the Caelian Hill.

10. *rēgnāset*, contracted form of *rēgnāvisset*.

arsit, was consumed; from *ārdeō*, to burn, in intransitive sense.

11. *Numae ex filiā nepōs*, a grandson of Numa, the son of his daughter.

suscēpit imperium, succeeded to the throne.

13. *Iāniculum*, part of the object of *adiēcit*. The Janiculum is on the opposite side of the Tiber from the other hills and is not usually reckoned as one of the seven hills.

apud ōstium, the conjunction *et* is understood before *apud*, and also before *Aventinum* in line 12. Conjunctions are omitted more freely in Latin than in English.

14. *civitātem*, the name of the city was Ostia. It was the sea-port of Rome.

suprā mare, on the sea.

17. *circum* (noun), the Circus Maximus, an enclosure between the Palatine and the Aventine hills, for races and other sports.

18. *lūdōs Rōmānōs*, this was a particular celebration occurring in September of each year.

19. *idem*, translate simply *he* (subject of *vicit*). It is sometimes difficult to indicate in English the exact emphasis given by this word.

nōn parum agrōrum, a large area of their country (not a little of their land); the phrase is object of **iūxit**. The word **parum**, which is sometimes an adverb, is here a noun.

20. **sublātum isdem . . . iūxit**, he took from them (*isdem*) a large area of their country and annexed it to; *isdem* is a dative of reference used with a word of taking away.

sublātum, perfect participle of **tollō**, in agreement with **parum**. The participle is occasionally translated as here by a verb coordinate with the main verb of its sentence.

21. **triumphāns**, with a triumphal procession.

Mūrōs fēcit, this wall was known as the Servian Wall, and was commonly believed to have been built by the king who followed Tarquinius Priscus.

22. **per filiōs**. The accusative with **per** is here equivalent to the ablative of agent, **ā filiis**.

23. **rēgis eius**, in apposition with **Ancl**.

24. **genitus ex**, a son of.

Page 261, l. 1. **dūxit**, extended.

3. **omnibus in cēsum dēlātis**, when all had been enumerated.

4. **capita lxxxiii milia civium Rōmānōrum**, a population of eighty-three thousand Roman citizens. **milia** is a noun in apposition with **capita**, which means heads, as in the phrase "so many head of cattle."

7. **filiae**, genitive, depending on **scelere**, connected by **et** with **generi uxōrem**, as his wife.

9. **quae gēns**, a nation which.

ad Campāniam euntibus, in the direction of Campania (for those going toward), a special use of the dative of reference. The participle is used as a substantive.

10. **Gabiōs civitātem**, the city of Gabii. When the name of a city is given with the word **urbs** (or **civitās**) it usually stands in apposition. The English equivalent is *of* and the proper name.

11. **Capitōliō** here means the Capitoline Hill; in line 22, p. 260, **Capitōlium** means the Capitoline temple.

12. **in octāvō decimō milliārīō**, the preposition might have been omitted without affecting the meaning, as in line 7, p. 260.

13. **positam**, situated.

14. **perdidit**, he was compelled to flee because of the indignation aroused by a crime committed by one of his sons.

cumque imperāset, etc., and after a reign of twenty-four years. **-que** is always translated before the word to which it is added.

imperāset, contracted form of **imperāvisset**.

15. **Rōmae**, the same case as **Rōmae** in line 17, p. 259.

rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs, *the reigns of seven kings lasted*. The verb is impersonal. The use of **per septem rēgēs** is like that of **per filiōs**, line 22, p. 260.

16. **annis**, the use of the ablative instead of the accusative to express duration is irregular.

cum, *although*.

17. **ubi plūrimum**, *at its greatest extent (where most)*.

18. **possidēret**, *exercised authority*.

19. **Hinc cōsulēs coepēre**, *after this the consulship was established*. **coepēre**, the ending **-ērunt** is more frequently used than **-ēre** in the third person plural of the perfect, but some writers use both.

duo, in apposition with **cōsulēs**.

20. **malus**, may here be translated *troublesome to the state*.

voluisset, subjunctive by attraction.

eum, object of **coercēret**.

21. **placuit nē habērent**, *it was thought best that they should not hold (it was pleasing that, etc.)*

22. **nē redderentur**, *that they might not become (be rendered)*.

23. **civilēs**, *of the character of citizens*.

24. **quī scirent**, *since they knew*.

sē futūrōs esse privātōs, indirect discourse.

25. **ab expulsis rēgibus**, *after the expulsion of the kings*.

26. **maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur**, *had been especially active in bringing about the expulsion of Tarquinius*.

27. **Lucretiae**, she was the victim of the crime which had been the cause of the uprising against Tarquinius.

Tarquiniō Collatinō, *from Tarquinius Collatinus*. The case is the same as that of **isdem**, line 20, p. 260.

28. **nē quisquam**, *that no one*.

30. **locō ipsius**, *in his place*.

31. **cōsul**, predicate nominative with **factus est**.

Page 262, l. 1. **urbī**, dative of reference with the phrase **bellum commōvit**.

Rōmae, dative, in apposition with **urbī**.

3. **restitui**, present passive infinitive.

4. **in vicem sē occidērunt**, *killed each other*.

7. **lūxērunt**, from **lūgeō**.

9. **patrem**, in apposition with **Sp. Lucretium Tricipitinum**.

quō . . . mortuō, *and when he (Tricipitinus) fell ill and died*, ablative absolute.

10. **collēgam sibi**, *as his colleague*. **sibi** in line 10, and also in line 8, is dative of reference.

12. *urbe, from the city.*
perisset, from pereō.
15. *Rōmānis*, dative with a form of *inferre*, a compound of *in* which does not express motion.
ferente *Porcennā*, ablative absolute; *auxilium* is object of *ferente*.
18. *post rēgēs exāctōs* means the same as *ab expulsīs rēgibus*, line 25, p. 261.
20. *Tusculum, to Tusculum.*
21. *quae civitās*, the order of translation is the same as that of *quae gēns*, line 9, p. 261.
22. *privātus, in private life.*
cōsensuit, from cōsensescō.
24. *dē his triumphātum est, a triumph was celebrated for the victory over them.* The verb is impersonal like *rēgnātum est*, line 15, p. 261.
25. *ille*, following the noun with which it agrees, means *the celebrated*.
26. *fātālīter mortuus est*, translate like *morbō dēcessit*, line 3, p. 260 (*fātālīter, by fate*).
27. *sūmptum habuerit sepultūrae, the expense of his funeral was paid (he had the expense of his funeral).*
29. *ad iniūriam socerī vindicandam, to avenge the overthrow of his father-in-law.*
30. *ingentem*, modifies *exercitum*.
- Page 263, l. 1. *dictātōri*, dative with a compound of *ob*.
obsequerētur, subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.
5. *tamquam premerētur, on the ground that they were oppressed.*
6. *Tum et ipse, then, also, they; ipse* is singular to agree with *populus*, but the English idiom requires a plural.
16. *urbis*, we should say "from the city."
oppugnātūrus patriam suam, intending to attack his native city.
20. *secundus post Tarquiniū, the first-after Tarquinius.* The Latin counts the starting point of a series in reckoning the position of any member of the series.
25. *omne certāmen implendum, that the whole undertaking (struggle) would be carried out.* This construction is not according to the usage of Latin of the best period.
- omnēs nōbilēs et quī . . . dēbērent, all of them (being) men of high rank and each one capable of commanding a great army.*
- Page 264, l. 7. *togam praetextam*, the toga praetexta, which had a purple border, was worn by the more important officials of the government and also by young boys. The toga worn by the adult private citizen was white.

12. *sextō miliāriō absint*, is (only) six miles distant.

20. *dītissimam*, superlative of *dives*.

22. *quasi*, on the ground that.

24. *Statim*, just at this time.

victōs, translate by a relative clause, *whom they had defeated*.

25. *secūti*, pursuing.

28. *labōrārent*, were suffering.

Page 265, l. 1. *Gallis superventum est*, the Gauls were surprised.

Impersonal construction.

gravissimē, overwhelmingly.

2. *eōs ita cecidit*, so thoroughly crushed them.

5. *quasi*, as if he were.

11. *Séquani*, the Sequani and Helvetians were originally different tribes, but either they had been united at the time of Eutropius, or else Eutropius confused their identity.

vincendō per bella gravissima, conquering in hard-fought wars.

vincendō is a gerund used somewhat freely as an ablative of manner.

12. *Ōceanum Britannicum*, the English Channel.

14. *circuitū*, in circumference.

ad his et triciēs centēna milia passuum, about 3,200 miles.

16. *nē . . . quidem*, the emphatic word stands between *nē* and *quidem*.

17. *eōs victōs*, when he had conquered them.

18. *Galliae imperāvit*, he levied upon Gaul.

annuum, modifies *stipendium*.

19. *quadringentiēs* (supply *centēna milia sēstertium*), forty million sesterces, a little over \$1,600,000.

21. *male pugnāvit*, met with defeat.

27. *circā*, near, an unusual meaning of the word.

Page 266, l. 4. *quī . . . restituit*, who was a man of unusual courage, and remedied the disaster.

5. *Persās*, object of *vinceret*.

6. *exsecrandum*, deplorable.

7. *quō*, by which.

10. *Contrādictum est*, he was opposed; the verb is impersonal.

13. *iniūriam*, affront.

congregātōs habēbat, translate like the past perfect of *congregō*.

15. *nōbilitās*, nobles.

16. *fūgit*, singular, to agree with the nearest part of the compound subject.

17. *Pompēiō duce*, under the leadership of Pompey.

20. *petiit*, went to (sought).

24. *nocte interveniente*, as night had come on.

25. *nec Pompēiū scire vincere, that Pompey did not know how to conquer.*

27. *Palaeopharsalum*, the town is usually called Pharsalus.

Page 267, l. 1. *fuisset*, subjunctive in a relative descriptive clause.

2. *nōn integra*, not quite (not entire).

3. *Numquam . . . subāctūrae*, never before had larger or more skillfully commanded Roman forces met, forces which might easily have subdued the whole world. The employment of the future active participle here is not according to the best Latin usage. The negatives *neque . . . neque* do not destroy the effect of the preceding negative, *numquam*.

5. *dūcerentur*, a somewhat irregular use of a condition. It is in sense contrary to fact in past time (had been led), but the form suggests merely anticipation from a past point of view.

6. *Pugnātum est ingentī contentiōne*, the battle was fought with great stubbornness.

victus, supply *est*.

10. *Qui*, *he*.

fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus, having regard for his own fortunes rather than for friendship.

11. *Quō cōspectō*, at the sight.

13. *generī*, Pompey had married Caesar's daughter, but she had died before the beginning of the civil war.

14. *Ipsī parāre voluit insidiās*, wished to deal treacherously with him. *Ipsī* is a dative of reference.

16. *Victus perit*, he was defeated and lost his life.

17. *Alexandriā*, ablative with *potior*.

18. *Pharnacēn*, object of *vicit*; *rebellantem* and *occupantem* agree with *Pharnacēn*. It was after this battle that Caesar sent the famous message *vēni, vidī, vici*.

21. *ad mortem cōgit*, Eutropius implies that Caesar compelled Pharnaces to commit suicide. But other historians say that he was killed by one of his generals.

24. *eī dictātōrī*, when he (Caesar) was dictator; *eī* is a dative of reference and *dictātōrī* is in apposition with it.

ante annum, a year before.

25. *Infinīta nobilitās*, a great many of the nobles (who had fled from Rome).

Page 268, l. 6. *Post annum*, a year later.

9. *ultimum*, supply *proelium*.

10. *adeō paene*, so nearly.

11. *fugientibus suis*, when his men began to flee, ablative absolute.

12. *nātus annōs sex et quinquāgintā, at the age of fifty-six.*

14. *maior, the older; minor, the younger.* The word *nātū* is understood.

15. *bellis civilibus compositis, when the civil wars had been ended.*

16. *Agere insolentius, to conduct himself somewhat arrogantly.*

17. *et*, coordinate with *nec* and *-que*. Omit in translation.

honōrēs, offices.

19. *rēgia, king-like.*

20. *confūratum est in eum, a conspiracy was formed against him,*
impersonal.

24. *senātūs diē, on the day of the meeting of the senate.*

THE FORMATION OF LATIN WORDS

(1) Many Latin words are formed from other words by the use of endings which have special meanings. The meaning and use of some of the endings which are thus employed are as follows:

(2) Nouns formed by adding **-tor** (occasionally **-sor**) to the participial stem indicate the person who does the act expressed by the verb from which they are derived:

victor, a conqueror, from **vincō**.

a. Such nouns may be formed from **moneō**, **capīō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, and many other verbs.

b. These nouns in **-tor** and **-sor** are masculine. There is a corresponding feminine form, ending in **-trix**: **victrix**, **adiūtrix**, **administrātrix**.

c. Many of these words have been taken into the English language without change of form, but sometimes the meaning has been changed from that of the Latin word; **doctor**, from **docēō**, originally meant *one who teaches*, then *a learned man* in any special form of knowledge.

(3) Names of qualities (abstract nouns) are formed from adjective stems with the endings **-tās** and **-tūdō**, and from adjective or noun stems with the ending **-tūs**. These nouns are all feminine:

libertās, freedom, from **liber**.

magnitūdō, greatness, from **magnus**.

virtūs, manliness, courage, from **vir**.

a. Nouns with the ending **-tās** may be formed from **gravis**, heavy, **levis**, light, **nōbīlis**, well-known, noble. Some of these words came to be used as collective nouns, indicating a group of persons possessing the quality named: **nōbilitās**, originally *celebrity*, came to mean *the prominent persons* of a state.

b. The English derivatives of these words end in **-ty**: *liberty*, *nobility*.

c. Nouns with the ending **-tūdō** may be formed from **lātus**, broad, **altus**, high, **fortis**, brave. The English derivatives from this group end in **-tude**: *magnitude*, *fortitude*.

d. Other nouns formed like **virtūs** are **servitūs**, slavery, from **servus**; **senectūs**, old age, from **senex** (old).

(4) Nouns formed with the ending **-lus** (**-ulus**, **-ellus**, **-illus**) are diminutives; that is, they indicate a small object. The ending is really an adjective ending, but most of the words thus derived have come to be used as nouns:

filiolus, a little son, from **filius**.

rēgulus, a petty king, from **rēx** (stem **rēg-**).

a. Nouns ending in **-r** change the final **r** to **l** when **-lus** is added:
libellus, a little book, from **liber**; **agellus**, a little field, from **ager**.

(5) Adjectives ending in **-ōsus** are formed from nouns, and mean *full of* or *abounding in* that which is named by the nouns from which they are derived:

periculōsus, full of danger, dangerous, from **periculum**.

annōsus, full of years, aged, from **annus**.

a. An adjective meaning *abounding in space* may be derived from **spatium**.

(6) There are also certain syllables used as prefixes with special meanings.

a. The syllable **re-** or **red-** (**red-** always before vowels and **h**) means *back* or *again*:

redire, to come back.

rescribere, to write in reply.

b. Sometimes the prefix seems to have lost its force, leaving no appreciable difference between the simple verb and the derivative: **manēre**, **remanēre**.

(7) The syllable **in-** prefixed to adjectives means *not*:

iniūstus, not just.

indignus, not worthy.

a. In English derivatives from these words the prefix usually becomes **un-**: *unjust*, *uncommon*. But sometimes it keeps its original form: *incapable*, *incorrect*.

b. The Latin preposition **in**, meaning *in*, *on*, or *against*, which is used to form compound verbs, is a different word.

(8) The syllable **per-** used with adjectives and adverbs means *very*:

perfacilis, very easy.

permulti, very many.

a. **per** when used with verbs means *through* or else serves to emphasize the meaning of the verb:

perrumpere, to break through.

perfrui, to enjoy thoroughly.

(9) The syllable **dis-** or **dī-** used with verbs means *apart*:

discēdere, to go apart.

distinēre, to hold apart.

(10) Most prepositions are used as prefixes to form compound verbs, usually with their original meaning. Sometimes, however, they serve merely to emphasize. The preposition **cum** appears in composition as **com-** or **con-**: **comportāre**, to carry together, collect; **concurrere**, to run together.

FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES

The following list of phrases includes quotations from Latin which are frequently found in English literature, and also a number of mottoes and phrases which are in common use:

Ad astra per aspera, To the stars through difficulties (motto of Kansas).

Ad utrumque parātus, Prepared for either result.

Alter ego est amīcus, A friend is one's second self.

Aurī sacra famēs, Accursed greed for gold.

Ē plūribus ūnum, One (formed) from many (motto of the United States).

Ex animō, Sincerely.

Esse quā vidēri, To be rather than to seem.

Fāta viam inuenient, The fates will find a way.

Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, Men usually believe willingly that which they wish.

Fiat lux, Let there be light.

Fiat iūstitia, Let justice be done.

Fortēs fortuna iuvat, Fortune favors the brave.

Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō, I am a man, and I regard nothing as foreign to me which has to do with humanity.

Horribile dictū, Horrible to relate.

In hōc signō vincēs, In this sign you shall conquer.

Labōrāre est orāre, To labor is to pray.

Labor omnia vincit, Toil conquers all things.

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō, A sound mind in a sound body.

Mēns sibi cōsciū rēcti, A mind conscious in itself (to itself) of right.

Mirābile dictū, Wonderful to say.

Montānī semper liberī, Mountaineers are always freemen (motto of West Virginia).

Nōn prōgredi est regredi, Not to go forward is to go backward.

Nōn sibi sed omnibus, Not for one's self but for all.

Pāce tuā, With your permission.

Possunt quia posse videntur, They can because they think they can.

Quod erat dēmōstrandum (abbr. *Q. E. D.*), Which was to be proved.

Semper parātus, Always ready.

Sic itur ad astra, Thus one rises to fame (to the stars).

Sic semper tyrannīs, Ever thus to tyrants (motto of Virginia).

Sic trānsit glōria mundi, Thus passes away the glory of the world.

Sine diē, Without a day (said of an assembly which adjourns without a date fixed for meeting again).

Tempora mūtāntur et nōs mūtāmur in illīs, The times change and we change with them (in them).

Vincit quī patitur, He conquers who endures.

Vincit quī sē vincit, He conquers who conquers himself.

APPENDIX

SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS
NOUNS1. FIRST DECLENSION, *a*-stems

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	rosa	rosae
<i>Gen.</i>	rosae	rosarum
<i>Dat.</i>	rosae	rosis
<i>Acc.</i>	rosam	rosas
<i>Abl.</i>	rosā	rosis

2. SECOND DECLENSION, *o*-stems

	SINGULAR				
<i>N.</i>	amicus	puer	ager	vir	templum
<i>G.</i>	amici	pueri	agri	virī	templī
<i>D.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
<i>Ac.</i>	amicum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
<i>Ab.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
	PLURAL				
<i>N.</i>	amici	pueri	agri	virī	templa
<i>G.</i>	amicōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
<i>D.</i>	amicis	pueris	agris	virīs	templis
<i>Ac.</i>	amicōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
<i>Ab.</i>	amicis	pueris	agris	virīs	templis

NOTE. The vocative singular of *-us* nouns ends in *-e*: *amice*. The genitive singular and the vocative singular of *filius* and of proper nouns in *-ius* end in *-i*: *fill*.

3. THIRD DECLENSION

A. CONSONANT STEMS

	SINGULAR			
<i>N.</i>	lēx	mīles	frāter	homō
<i>G.</i>	lēgis	militis	frātris	hominis
<i>D.</i>	lēgī	militi	frātri	hominī
<i>Ac.</i>	lēgem	militem	frātrem	hominem
<i>Ab.</i>	lēge	milite	frātre	homine

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>lēgum</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>frātrum</i>	<i>hominum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>flūminis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>corporis</i>	<i>itineris</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>flūminī</i>	<i>capiti</i>	<i>corpori</i>	<i>itinerī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>flūmine</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>corpore</i>	<i>itinere</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>flūminum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	<i>corporum</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

B. 1-stems

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turris</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turris</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>hosti</i>	<i>caedi</i>	<i>igni</i>	<i>turri</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>ignem</i>	<i>turrim or -em</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>igni or -e</i>	<i>turri or -e</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>turrēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>caedium</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>turrium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hostis or -ēs</i>	<i>caedis or -ēs</i>	<i>ignis or -ēs</i>	<i>turris or -ēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turribus</i>

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>insigne</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>insignis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	<i>animālis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>insigni</i>	<i>calcarī</i>	<i>animālī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>insigne</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>insigni</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>animālī</i>

		PLURAL	
<i>N.</i>	insignia	calcāria	animālia
<i>G.</i>	insignium	calcārium	animālium
<i>D.</i>	insignibus	calcāribus	animālibus
<i>Ac.</i>	insignia	calcāria	animālia
<i>Ab.</i>	insignibus	calcāribus	animālibus

C. MIXED STEMS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	urbs	urbēs	gēns	gentēs
<i>G.</i>	urbis	urbium	gentis	gentium
<i>D.</i>	urbī	urbibus	genti	gentibus
<i>Ac.</i>	urbem	urbēs <i>or</i> -īs	gentem	gentēs <i>or</i> -īs
<i>Ab.</i>	urbe	urbibus	gente	gentibus

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	vīs	virēs	bōs	bovēs
<i>G.</i>	—	virium	bovis	boum
<i>D.</i>	—	viribus	bovī	būbus <i>or</i> bōbus
<i>Ac.</i>	vim	virīs <i>or</i> -ēs	bovem	bovēs
<i>Ab.</i>	vī	viribus	bove	būbus <i>or</i> bōbus

4. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	exercitūī <i>or</i> -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>G.</i>	domūs	domuum <i>or</i> domōrum
<i>D.</i>	domūī <i>or</i> domō	domibus
<i>Ac.</i>	domum	domūs <i>or</i> domōs
<i>Ab.</i>	domū <i>or</i> domō	domibus
<i>Loc.</i>	domī	

5. FIFTH DECLENSION, *ŏ*-stems

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>G.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>D.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Ac.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Ab.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

6. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, good

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	boni	bonae	bona
<i>G.</i>	boni	bonae	boni	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
<i>D.</i>	bono	bonae	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Ac.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonos	bonas	bona
<i>Ab.</i>	bono	bonā	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis

miser, unhappy

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>N.</i>	miser	miserā	miserum	miseri	miserāe	miserā
<i>G.</i>	miseri	miserāe	miseri	miserorum	miserarum	miserorum
<i>D.</i>	miserō	miserāe	miserō	miseris	miseris	miseris
<i>Ac.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	miserā
<i>Ab.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō	miseris	miseris	miseris

pulcher, beautiful

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>N.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>G.</i>	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchri	pulchrorum	pulchrarum	pulchrorum
<i>D.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris
<i>Ac.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Ab.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

7.

THIRD DECLENSION

A. THREE TERMINATIONS—(i-stems)

acer, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>acer</i>	<i>aceris</i>	<i>acre</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>aceris</i>	<i>aceris</i>	<i>aceris</i>	<i>acerium</i>	<i>acerium</i>	<i>acerium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>aceribus</i>	<i>aceribus</i>	<i>aceribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>acrēs or -is</i>	<i>acrēs or -is</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>aceribus</i>	<i>aceribus</i>	<i>aceribus</i>

B. TWO TERMINATIONS—(i-stems)

omnis, all

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs or -is</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

C. ONE TERMINATION

i-stems

*fēlix, fortunate**potēns, powerful**vetus, old*
(a consonant stem)

SINGULAR					
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>
<i>G. fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>
<i>D. fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>potenti</i>	<i>potenti</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>
<i>Ac. fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>potentem</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>
<i>Ab. fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>potenti, -e</i>	<i>potenti, -e</i>	<i>vetere</i>	<i>vetere</i>

PLURAL					
<i>N. fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>potentēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>G. fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>potentium</i>	<i>potentium</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
<i>D. fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
<i>Ac. fēlicēs, -is</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>potentēs, -is</i>	<i>potentia</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Ab. fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

8.

PRESENT PARTICIPLES

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> portāns	portāns		portantēs	portantia
<i>G.</i> portantis	portantis		portantium	portantium
<i>D.</i> portanti	portanti		portantibus	portantibus
<i>Ac.</i> portantem	portāns		portantēs (-is)	portantia
<i>Ab.</i> portante (-i)	portante (-i)		portantibus	portantibus

9.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

<i>N.</i> sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
<i>G.</i> sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>D.</i> sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Ac.</i> sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Ab.</i> sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(The plurals are like those of **bonus** and **miser**.)

10.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlix	fēlicior, fēlicius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

11.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

12. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, broader

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
<i>G.</i> lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
<i>D.</i> lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
<i>Ac.</i> lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
<i>Ab.</i> lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

plūs, more

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>G.</i> ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>D.</i> ———	———	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Ac.</i> ———	plūs	plūrēs or -is	plūra
<i>Ab.</i> ———	———	plūribus	plūribus

13. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācrius	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
multum	magis	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

14.

NUMERALS

Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as *one each, two each*, etc.

<i>Roman</i> <i>Numerals</i>	<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>	<i>Distributive</i>
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um	singuli, -ae, -a
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus or alter	binī
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī or trīnī
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V.	quīque	quīntus	quīnī
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimum	duodēvicēnī
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimum	ūndēvicēnī
XX.	vīgintī	vicēsimum	vicēnī
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vicēsimum primus	vicēnī singuli
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsimum	duodētricēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsimum	ūndētricēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsimum	tricēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimum	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum	sexāgēnī
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum	septuāgēnī
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimum	octōgēnī
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum	nōnāgēnī
C.	centum	centēsimum	centēnī

CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) primus	centēnī (et) singulī
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducentī
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecenī
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī
D.	quingentī	quingentēsimus	quingēnī
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescenī
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī
M.	mille	millēsimus	singula milia
MM.	duo milia	bis millēsimus	bina milia

15.

DECLENSION OF **duo** AND **trēs**

	duo, two			trēs, three	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>G.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>D.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Ac.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Ab.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

PRONOUNS

16.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, ego , <i>I</i>			Second person, tū , <i>you (thou)</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
<i>G.</i>	meī	{ nostrum nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum vestrī
<i>D.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
<i>Ac.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
<i>Ab.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually *is*, *he*, *ea*, *she*, *id*, *it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive pronouns.

17.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

First person, <i>meī</i> , of myself			Second person, <i>tui</i> , of yourself		Third person, <i>sui</i> , of himself, etc.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>G.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrī</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>vestrī</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>

18.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

<i>1st pers.</i>	<i>meus, -a, -um, my</i>	<i>noster, -tra, -trum, our</i>
<i>2d pers.</i>	<i>tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)</i>	<i>vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one)</i>
<i>3d pers.</i>	<i>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)</i>	<i>suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)</i>
	<i>eius (gen. sing. of is) his, her, its (when not referring to the subject)</i>	<i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) their (when not referring to the subject)</i>

19.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

hic, this

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

ille, that

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

a. iste is declined like ille

is, this, that, he, she, it

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	is	ea	id	ii, ei	eae	ea
<i>G.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>D.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eis	iīs, eis	iīs, eis
<i>Ac.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ab.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eis	iīs, eis	iīs, eis

20. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

Idem, the same

SINGULAR				PLURAL			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	idem	eadem	idem	<i>N.</i>	idem or	eadem	eadem
<i>G.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem		eidem		
<i>D.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	<i>G.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Ac.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	<i>D.</i>	isdem or	isdem or	isdem or
<i>Ab.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
				<i>Ac.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
				<i>Ab.</i>	isdem or	isdem or	isdem or
					eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

21. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>G.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>D.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Ac.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Ab.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

22. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

qui, who

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

23. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes *quī*. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always *quod*.

24. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

	<i>quisque, each</i>			<i>quisquam, anyone</i>	
	SINGULAR				
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>G.</i>	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
<i>D.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Ac.</i>	quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Ab.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōquam	quōquam

Plural rare

Plural missing

quidam, a certain

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>G.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>D.</i>	euidam	euidam	euidam
<i>Ac.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Ab.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>G.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>D.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Ac.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Ab.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

aliquis, some

SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	aliquis (aliqui)	aliqua
<i>G.</i>	alicuius	alicuius
<i>D.</i>	alicui	alicui
<i>Ac.</i>	aliquem	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Ab.</i>	aliquō	aliquō
PLURAL		
<i>N.</i>	aliqui	aliqua
<i>G.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquōrum
<i>D.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Ac.</i>	aliquōs	aliqua
<i>Ab.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus

REGULAR VERBS

25.

FIRST CONJUGATION**ACTIVE VOICE**Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvi, portātum***Present***INDICATIVE****SINGULAR**

portō, *I carry*
 portās, *you carry*
 portat, *he carries*

PLURAL

portāmus, *we carry*
 portātis, *you carry*
 portant, *they carry*

SUBJUNCTIVE

portem
 portēs
 portet

portēmus
 portētis
 portent

*Past***SINGULAR**

portābam, *I was carrying*
 portābās, *you were carrying*
 portābat, *he was carrying*

portārem
 portārēs
 portāret

PLURAL

portābāmus, *we were carrying*
 portābātis, *you were carrying*
 portābant, *they were carrying*

portārēmus
 portārētis
 portārent

INDICATIVE

Future

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

portābō, *I shall carry*
 portābis, *you will carry*
 portābit, *he will carry*

PLURAL

portābimus, *we shall carry*
 portābitis, *you will carry*
 portābunt, *they will carry*

Perfect

SINGULAR

portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*
 portāvistī, *you have carried, etc.*
 portāvit, *he has carried, etc.*

portāverim
 portāveris
 portāverit

PLURAL

portāvimus, *we have carried, etc.*
 portāvistis, *you have carried, etc.*
 portāverunt, -ēre, *they have carried, etc.*

portāverimus
 portāveritis
 portāverint

Past Perfect

SINGULAR

portāveram, *I had carried*
 portāverās, *you had carried*
 portāverat, *he had carried*

portāvissem
 portāvissēs
 portāvisset

PLURAL

portāverāmus, *we had carried*
 portāverātis, *you had carried*
 portāverant, *they had carried*

portāvissēmus
 portāvissētis
 portāvissent

Future Perfect

SINGULAR

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
 portāveris, *you will have carried*
 portāverit, *he will have carried*

PLURAL

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
 portāveritis, *you will have carried*
 portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

Present

- Sing. 2.* portā, carry (thou)
Plur. 2. portāte, carry (ye)

Future

- Sing. 2.* portātō, thou shalt carry
 3. portātō, he shall carry
Plur. 2. portātōte, ye shall carry
 3. portantō, they shall carry

INFINITIVES

- Pres.* portāre, to carry
Past portāvisse, to have carried
Fut. portātūrus esse, to be about to carry

PARTICIPLES

- Pres.* portāns, carrying
Fut. portātūrus, about to carry

GERUND

- G.* portandī, of carrying
D. portandō, to (for) carrying
Ac. portandum, carrying
Ab. portandō, from, by carrying

SUPINE

- Ac.* portātum, to carry
Ab. portātū, to carry

26.

PASSIVE VOICE

Present

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

- portor, I am carried
 portāris, -re, you are carried
 portātur, he is carried

PLURAL

- portāmur, we are carried
 portāmini, you are carried
 portantur, they are carried

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

- porter
 portēris, -re
 portētur

PLURAL

- portēmur
 portēmini
 portentur

Past

SINGULAR

- portābar, I was (being) carried
 portābāris, -re, you were carried
 portābātur, he was carried

PLURAL

- portābāmur, we were (being) carried
 portābāmini, you were (being) carried
 portābantur, they were (being) carried

SINGULAR

- portārer
 portārēris, -re
 portārētur

PLURAL

- portārēmur
 portārēmini
 portārentur

INDICATIVE

Future

SINGULAR

portābor, *I shall be carried*
 portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
 portābitur, *he will be carried*

PLURAL

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
 portābimini, *you will be carried*
 portābuntur, *they will be carried*

Perfect

SINGULAR

portātus sum, *I have been carried*
 portātus es, *you have been carried*
 portātus est, *he has been carried*

PLURAL

portāti sumus, *we have been carried*
 portāti estis, *you have been carried*
 portāti sunt, *they have been carried*

Past Perfect

SINGULAR

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
 portātus erās, *you had been carried*
 portātus erat, *he had been carried*

PLURAL

portāti erāmus, *we had been carried*
 portāti erātis, *you had been carried*
 portāti erant, *they had been carried*

Future Perfect

SINGULAR

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
 portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
 portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

PLURAL

portāti erimus, *we shall have been carried*
 portāti eritis, *you will have been carried*
 portāti erunt, *they will have been carried*

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

portātus sim
 portātus sis
 portātus sit

PLURAL

portāti sīmus
 portāti sītis
 portāti sint

SINGULAR

portātus essem
 portātus essēs
 portātus esset

PLURAL

portāti essēmus
 portāti essētis
 portāti essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

Future

Sing. 2. portāre, *be (thou) carried* *Sing. 2.* portātor, *thou shalt be carried*

Plur. 2. portāmini, *be (ye) carried* *3.* portātor, *he shall be carried*

Plur. 2. —————

3. portantor, *they shall be carried*

INFINITIVES

PARTICIPLES

Pres. amāri, *to be loved*

Past portātus, *having been carried*

Past amātus esse, *to have been loved* *Fut.* portandus, *to be carried*

Fut. amātum iri, *to be about to be loved*

27. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

audiō, audire, audiui, auditum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
	monēs	dūcis	capis	audis
	monet	dūcit	capit	audit
	monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audimus
	monētis	dūcitis	capitis	auditis
	monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt
<i>Past</i>	monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
	monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
	monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
	monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
	monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
	monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant
<i>Future</i>	monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
	monēbis	dūcēs	capies	audies
	monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
	monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiemus	audiemus
	monēbitis	dūcētis	capietis	audietis
	monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient
<i>Perfect</i>	monuī	dūxī	cēpī	audiui
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monueram	dūxeram	cēperam	audiveram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audiverō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	monëam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
	monëās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
	monëat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
	monëāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
	monëātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
	monëant	dūcant	capiant	audiant
<i>Past</i>	monërem	dūcerem	caperem	audirem
	monërēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audirēs
	monëret	dūceret	caperet	audiret
	monërēinus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
	monërētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audirētis
	monërent	dūcerent	caperent	audirent
<i>Perfect</i>	monuerim	dūxerim	cēperim	audiverim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monuisssem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audivisssem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	monē	dūc	cape	audi
	monēte	dūcite	capite	audite
<i>Future</i>	2 monētō	dūcitō	capitō	auditō
	3 monētō	dūcitō	capitō	auditō
	2 monētōte	dūcitōte	capitōte	auditōte
	3 monentō	dūcuntō	capiunto	audiuntō

PARTICIPLES

<i>Present</i>	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
<i>Future</i>	monitūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	auditūrus

INFINITIVE

<i>Present</i>	monēre	dūcere	capere	audire
<i>Past</i>	monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audivisse
<i>Future</i>	monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	auditūrus esse

GERUND

monendi	dūcendi	capiendi	audiendi
monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

SUPINE

monitum	ductum	captum	auditum
monitū	ductū	captū	auditū

28.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
	monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audiris, -re
	monētur	dūcitur	capitur	auditur
	monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audimur
	monēmini	dūcimini	capimini	audimini
	monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur
<i>Past</i>	monēbar	dūcēbar	capīēbar	audiēbar
	monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capīēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
	monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capīēbātur	audiēbātur
	monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capīēbāmur	audiēbāmur
	monēbāmini	dūcēbāmini	capīēbāmini	audiēbāmini
	monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capīēbantur	audiēbantur
<i>Future</i>	monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
	monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capīēris, -re	audiēris, -re
	monēbitur	dūcētur	capīētur	audiētur
	monēbimur	dūcēmur	capīēmur	audiēmur
	monēbimini	dūcēmini	capīēmini	audiēmini
	monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur
<i>Perfect</i>	monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	auditus sum
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	auditus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	auditus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
	monēaris, -re	dūcāris, -re	capīāris, -re	audiāris, -re
	monēātur	dūcātur	capīātur	audiātur
	monēāmur	dūcāmur	capīāmur	audiāmur
	monēāmini	dūcāmini	capīāmini	audiāmini
	monéantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur
<i>Past</i>	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
	monērēris, -re	dūcerēris, -re	caperēris, -re	audīrēris, -re
	monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
	monērēmini	dūcerēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

<i>Perfect</i>	monitus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	auditus sim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monitus essem	ductus essem	captus essem	auditus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	monēre monēmini	dūcere dūcimini	capere capimini	audīre audīmini
<i>Future</i>	2 ——— 3 monentor	——— dūcuntor	——— capiuntor	——— audiuntor

PARTICIPLES

<i>Past</i>	monitus	ductus	captus	auditus
<i>Future</i>	monendus	dūcendus	capiendus	audiendus

INFINITIVE

<i>Present</i>	monēri	dūci	capī	audīri
<i>Perfect</i>	monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	auditus esse
<i>Future</i>	monitum iri	ductum iri	captum iri	auditum iri

29.

DEPONENT VERBS

- I. cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum
- II. polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum
- III. sequor, sequi, secūtus sum
- IV. potior, potiri, potitus sum

INDICATIVE

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnor cōnāris, -re cōnātur cōnāmur cōnāmini cōnāntur	polliceor pollicēris, -re pollicētur pollicēmur pollicēmini pollicentur	sequor sequeris, -re sequitur sequimur sequimini sequuntur	potior potiris, -re potitur potimur potimini potiuntur
<i>Past</i>	cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	potiar
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	potitus sum
<i>P. Pf.</i>	cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	potitus eram
<i>F. Pf.</i>	cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	potitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōner	pollicear	sequar	potiar
<i>Past</i>	cōnārer	pollicērer	sequer	potirer
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sim	pollicitus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
<i>P. Pf.</i>	cōnātus essem	pollicitus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāre	pollicēre	sequere	potire
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātor	pollicētor	sequitor	potitor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	potīrī
<i>Past</i>	cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāns	pollicēns	sequēns	potiēns
<i>Past</i>	cōnātus	pollicitus	secūtus	potītus
<i>F. Act.</i>	cōnātūrus	pollicitūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
<i>F. Pass.</i>	cōnandus	pollicendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	pollicendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
---------------	------------------	----------------	----------------

SUPINE

cōnātum	pollicitum	secūtum	potitum
cōnātū	pollicitū	secūtū	potitū

IRREGULAR VERBS

30. CONJUGATION OF *sum*.

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

sum, I am
es, you are
est, he, she, it is

PLURAL

sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are

Past

eram, *I was*
 erās, *you were*
 erat, *he, she, it was*

erāmus, *we were*
 erātis, *you were*
 erant, *they were*

Future

erō, *I shall be*
 eris, *you will be*
 erit, *he, she, it will be*

erimus, *we shall be*
 eritis, *you will be*
 erunt, *they will be*

Perfect

fui, *I have been, I was*
 fuisti, *you have been, you were*
 fuit, *he, she, it has been, was*

fuimus, *we have been, we were*
 fuistis, *you have been, you were*
 fuerunt or -ēre, *they have been, etc.*

Past Perfect

fueram, *I had been*
 fuerās, *you had been*
 fuerat, *he, she, it had been*

fuerāmus, *we had been*
 fuerātis, *you had been*
 fuerant, *they had been*

Future Perfect

fuerō, *I shall have been*
 fueris, *you will have been*
 fuerit, *he, she, it will have been*

fuerimus, *we shall have been*
 fueritis, *you will have been*
 fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	simus
sis	sitis
sit	sint

Past

SINGULAR	PLURAL
essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

Perfect

fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

Past Perfect

fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. es, *be (thou)*

este, *be (ye)*

Future

<i>2d pers.</i>	<i>estō, be, thou shalt be</i>	<i>estōte, be, ye shall be</i>
<i>3d pers.</i>	<i>estō, let him be, he shall be</i>	<i>suntō, let them be, they shall be</i>

PARTICIPLE

Fut. *futūrus, about to be*

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>esse, to be</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>fuisse, to have been</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>futūrus esse or fore, to be about to be</i>

31. CONJUGATION OF *possum*.

Principal parts: ***possum, posse, potui***

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
		<i>Present</i>		
SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>		<i>possim</i>	<i>possimus</i>
<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>		<i>possis</i>	<i>possitis</i>
<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>		<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>
		<i>Past</i>		
<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>		<i>possem</i>	<i>possēmus</i>
<i>poterās</i>	<i>poterātis</i>		<i>possēs</i>	<i>possētis</i>
<i>poterat</i>	<i>poterant</i>		<i>posset</i>	<i>possent</i>
		<i>Future</i>		
<i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>			
		<i>Perfect</i>		
<i>potuī</i>	<i>potuimus</i>		<i>potuerim</i>	<i>potuerīmus</i>
		<i>Past Perfect</i>		
<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>		<i>potuissem</i>	<i>potuissēmus</i>
		<i>Future Perfect</i>		
<i>potuerō</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>			
		INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>posse</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>potuisse</i>	

32. CONJUGATION OF *prōsum*.Principal parts: *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui*

INDICATIVE		<i>Present</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>		<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>		<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>		<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

The remaining forms of the present system are conjugated like *sum*, with the prefix *prōd-*. The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem *prōfu-*.

33. CONJUGATION OF *ferō*.Principal parts: *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum*

INDICATIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris, -re</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
<i>Past</i>			
<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbāmus</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>
<i>Future</i>			
<i>feram</i>	<i>ferēmus</i>	<i>ferar</i>	<i>ferēmur</i>
<i>Perfect</i>			
<i>tuli</i>	<i>tulimus</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>lāti sumus</i>
<i>Past Perfect</i>			
<i>tuleram</i>	<i>tulerāmus</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>	<i>lāti erāmus</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
<i>tulerō</i>	<i>tulerimus</i>	<i>lātus erō</i>	<i>lāti erimus</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
<i>feram</i>	<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferar</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>
<i>Past</i>			
<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferrēmus</i>	<i>ferrer</i>	<i>ferrēmur</i>

Perfect

tulerim	tulerimus	lātus sim	lāti simus
---------	-----------	-----------	------------

Past Perfect

tulissem	tulissēmus	lātus essem	lāti essēmus
----------	------------	-------------	--------------

IMPERATIVE

Present

2 fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
-------	-------	-------	----------

Future

2 fertō	fertōte	fertor	—
3 fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri	<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Past</i> lātus
<i>Past</i>	tulisse	lātus esse	<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus	<i>Fut.</i> ferendus
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse	lātum iri			

GERUND

SUPINE

ferendī, etc.	Acc. lātum	Abl. lātū
---------------	------------	-----------

34. CONJUGATION OF *eō*.Principal parts: *eō, ire, ii or ivi, itum**Present*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>eō</i>	īmus	<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
<i>is</i>	<i>itis</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eātis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>

Past

<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>irēm</i>	<i>irēmus</i>
-------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

Future

<i>ibō</i>	<i>ibimus</i>
------------	---------------

Perfect

<i>ii or ivi</i>	<i>iimus or ivimus</i>	<i>ierim or iverim</i>	<i>ierimus or iverimus</i>
------------------	------------------------	------------------------	----------------------------

Past Perfect

ieram (īveram) ierāmus (īverāmus) īssem (īvissem) īssēmus (īvissēmus)

Future Perfect

ierō or īverō ierimus or īverimus

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ī,	ite	<i>Pres.</i> ire	<i>Pres.</i> iēns (<i>Gen.</i> euntis)
<i>Fut.</i> itō,	itōte	<i>Perf.</i> iisse or isse	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus
	ito,	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse	
	euntō		
GERUND			SUPINE
eundi, etc.			itum, itū

35. CONJUGATION OF *fiō*.

Principal parts: *fiō, fieri, factus sum*

INDICATIVE		<i>Present</i>	
<i>fiō</i>	—	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
<i>fīs</i>	—	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
<i>fiūt</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>
<i>Past</i>		<i>Future</i>	
<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>fierem</i>	<i>fierēmus</i>
<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiēmus</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Past Perfect</i>	
<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus essem</i>	
<i>factus eram</i>			
<i>Future Perfect</i>		<i>Imperative</i>	
<i>factus erō</i>		<i>fi, fite</i>	
<i>Imperative</i>		<i>Infinitive</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> <i>fi, fite</i>		<i>Pres.</i> <i>fieri</i>	<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus</i>
		<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus esse</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <i>faciendus</i>
		<i>Fut.</i> <i>factum iri</i>	

36. CONJUGATION OF *volō*, and its compounds.*volō, velle, volui, be willing.**nōlō, nolle, nōlui, be unwilling.**mālō, malle, mālui, prefer.*

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
	<i>vis</i>	<i>nōn vis</i>	<i>māvis</i>
	<i>vult</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>māvult</i>
	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nolumus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>
<i>Past</i>	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>volam</i>	<i>nōlam</i>	<i>mālam</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>volui</i>	<i>nōlui</i>	<i>mālui</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>mālueram</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>nōluerō</i>	<i>māluerō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>velim</i>	<i>nōlim</i>	<i>mālim</i>
<i>Past</i>	<i>vellem</i>	<i>nōllem</i>	<i>māllem</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluerim</i>	<i>nōluerim</i>	<i>māluerim</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>voluissem</i>	<i>nōluissem</i>	<i>māluissem</i>

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>nōlī</i>	<i>nōlitē</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>nōlitō</i>	<i>nōlitōte</i>
	<i>nōlitō</i>	<i>nōluntō</i>

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>velle</i>	<i>nolle</i>	<i>malle</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluisse</i>	<i>noluisse</i>	<i>māluisse</i>

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>volēns</i>	<i>nōlēns</i>
--------------	---------------	---------------

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

37. 1. Adjectives and participles agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns to which they belong (55).

2. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause (288).

3. A noun in apposition agrees in case with the noun which it explains (62).

4. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (44).

CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

38. 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case (11).

2. A predicate noun used with a finite form of *sum* is in the nominative case (50, 2).

THE GENITIVE

39. 1. The genitive is used to denote a person or thing referred to as possessing something (11).

2. The genitive is used to refer to the whole of something, of which a part is denoted by the word on which the genitive depends (265).

3. The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing (352).

4. Nouns and adjectives which denote actions sometimes take a dependent genitive in a relation similar to that of a direct object to the verb on which it depends (381).

5. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed, or the persons or objects making up a collective noun (521).

6. The verbs *memini* and *reminiscor*, *remember*, and *obliscor*, *forget*, frequently take a genitive as object. But if the object is a neuter pronoun or adjective it always stands in the accusative (543).

THE DATIVE

40. 1. The indirect object is in the dative (26).

2. The dative is used in dependence on adjectives of *attitude*, *quality*, or *relation* to indicate the person or thing toward which the attitude is directed or in reference to which the quality or relation is said to exist (27).

3. Verbs meaning to *favor*, *please*, *trust*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *spare*, and *persuade*, take their (apparent) objects in the dative (125).

4. The possessor of something may be denoted by the dative with the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of the verb meaning *to be* (325).

5. The purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve is often expressed by the dative (196).

6. With many verbs compounded with *ante*, *ob*, *prae*, or *sub*, a noun or pronoun connected in sense with the preposition is put in the dative. The dative is also thus used with compounds of *ad* and *in* when motion is not expressed, and occasionally with the compounds of a few other prepositions (324).

7. The dative is often used to indicate a person who is likely to be affected favorably or unfavorably by an act or situation, or with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. Occasionally this use of the dative is found with words referring to things (245).

8. With the future passive participle the dative is used to indicate the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done (538).

THE ACCUSATIVE

41. 1. The direct object of a verb is in the accusative (11).

2. A noun used to tell how long an act or situation continues is put in the accusative (177).

3. A noun used to express extent in space is put in the accusative (312).

4. With the names of towns and small islands, also with *domus*, the accusative without a preposition is used to name the place to which motion is directed. With other words in this construction a preposition, *ad* or *in*, is used (313).

THE ABLATIVE

42. 1. The ablative represents a combination of ideas, the original force of which is expressed by English phrases with the prepositions *from*, *in*, or *with* (33).

2. Verbs meaning to *separate*, *remove*, *deprive of*, *lack*, *be absent*, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with *ab* or *ex* (329).

3. With names of towns and small islands, also with *domus*, the ablative without a preposition is used to express the idea of place from which. With other words in this construction, a preposition, *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*, is used (330).

4. With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which indicates the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab* (98).

5. With the comparative form of an adjective (occasionally of an

adverb), if **quam** is omitted, the noun or pronoun indicating the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative without a preposition (340).

6. The ablative with **in** is used to indicate the place where something is or where some act occurs (110).

7. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate the time at which or within which an act occurs or a situation exists (211).

8. The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to indicate the person with whom one is associated in doing an act (104).

9. The manner in which an act is done may be expressed by the ablative with **cum**. But **cum** may be omitted if the noun is modified by an adjective (277).

10. The means or instrument with which an act is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (130).

11. The way or route by which one goes may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition (318).

12. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree or measure of difference between two things (346).

13. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to indicate some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence (370).

14. The ablative without a preposition may be used to indicate in what respect a statement is true (366).

15. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing (353).

16. The ablative with or without a preposition may be used to express cause (449).

17. The deponents **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vĕscor** take their objects in the ablative (419).

THE VOCATIVE

43. The vocative is used to denote the person addressed (34).

THE LOCATIVE

44. With the names of towns and small islands, also with **domus**, the place where some act occurs or something exists is denoted by the locative (299).

a. The locative has the same form as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declension; elsewhere it has the same form as the ablative. The locative of **domus** is **domi**.

MOODS

THE INDICATIVE

45. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

46. 1. The most important use of the subjunctive is to refer to an act as desired (456).

2. In a main clause the expression of desire may consist: (1) in urging someone to act with the speaker (456, a), (2) in giving an order to be carried out by someone else than the person addressed (456, b).

3. A subordinate clause expressing the purpose of the main act has its verb in the subjunctive. Purpose clauses are introduced by *ut* or *nē*, or a relative pronoun (460).

4. A substantive clause depending on a verb which expresses or implies desire has its verb in the subjunctive (470).

5. Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive introduced by *nē*, *that*, or *ut*, *that not* (531).

6. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause to refer to an act as anticipated or expected (476).

7. The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses expressing result (483).

8. A substantive clause depending on a verb or phrase which expresses the bringing about of an act or of a situation has its verb in the subjunctive (516).

9. A clause introduced by *cum* meaning *when*, if used to describe the situation in which the main act took place, has its verb in the past or past perfect subjunctive (511).

10. A *cum* clause introduced by *cum* meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive (520).

11. A clause introduced by *cum* meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive (526).

12. An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive (489).

13. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive (587).

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

47. 1. Non-committal conditional sentences have their verbs in the indicative (571).

2. Future less vivid conditional sentences have their verbs in the present or perfect subjunctive (581).

Alpēs, -ium, *F. pl.*, the Alps
alter, *altera*, *alterum*, the other;
 second
altitūdō, -dīnis, *F.*, height; depth
altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep
ambō, *ambae*, *ambō*, both
ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, walk
amicitia, -ae, *F.*, friendship
amicus, -i, *M.*, friend
āmittō, -ere, *āmisī*, *āmissum*, lose
amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, love
ampliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, increase,
 extend
amplius, *comparative adv.*, more
ancilla, -ae, *F.*, maid servant, serv-
 ant
Ancus, -i, *M.*, *see* **Mārcius**
angustus, -a, -um, narrow
animal, *animālis*, *N.*, animal
animus, -i, *M.*, mind, courage,
 spirit
annus, -i, *M.*, year
annuus, -a, -um, lasting a year, for
 a year, yearly
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, in
 front of; *adv.*, before, previ-
 ously
anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before
Antemnātes, -ium, *M. pl.*, the in-
 habitants of Antemnae
antiquus, -a, -um, old, ancient
ānulus, -i, *M.*, ring
Ap., *abbreviation for Appius*, a
Roman first name
appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call,
 name
appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 approach
apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, in
 the presence of; near; in, with
aqua, -ae, *F.*, water

Aquitāni, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Aquit-
 tanians, a people of Gaul
Arar, *Araris*, *M.*, the Saône, a
 river of Gaul
arbitror, *arbitrārī*, *arbitrātus sum*,
 think
Ardea, -ae, *F.*, Ardea, a city of
Latium
ārdeō, -ēre, *ārsī*, *ārsūrus*, take
 fire, burn
Ariminum, -i, *N.*, Ariminum, a
 city in northeastern Italy
Ariovistus, -i, *M.*, Ariovistus, a
German king
arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*, arms, weapons
armātus, -a, -um, armed
armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, arm
arō, *arāre*, *arāvi*, *arātum*, plow
arroganter, *adv.*, insolently
Arrūns, *Arruntis*, *M.*, Arruns, a
 son of *Tarquinius Superbus*
Arvernī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Ar-
 verni, a Gallic tribe
ascendō, -ere, *ascendī*, *ascēsum*,
 ascend
atque (*before vowels or conso-*
nants) or **ac** (*before consonants*
only), *conj.*, and
attribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribū-
 tum, assign
Atuātucī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Atua-
 tuci, a Belgian tribe
auctōritās, -tātis, *F.*, authority, in-
 fluence
audeō, -ēre, *ausus sum*, *semi-depo-*
nent, dare
audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, hear
augeō, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctum*, increase,
 add to
aureus, -a, -um, golden, of gold
aurum, -i, *N.*, gold

Aurunculēius, -ī, m., Aurunculeius, a Roman name; Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's officers

auspicium, -ī, n., auspices, sign
autem, conj., but, however; moreover

auxilium, -ī, n., aid, help; pl., auxiliaries

Aventinus, -a, -um, Aventine; **Aventinus Mōns**, the Aventine Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome

āvertō, -ere, āverti, āversum, turn away

Axona, -ae, f., the Aisne, a river of France

B

barbarus, -ī, m., barbarian, foreigner (not Greek or Roman)

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the Belgians
bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, engage in war, carry on war

Bellovacī, -ōrum, the Bellovaci, a tribe of Gaul

bellum, -ī, n., war

bene, adv., well

beneficium, -ī, n., favor, kindness
benignus, -a, -um, kind

Bibracte, **Bibractis**, n., Bibracte, a town of the Haeduan

Bibrax, **Bibractis**, f., Bibrax, a town of the Remi

Bibulus, -ī, m., Bibulus, a Roman name

bis, adv., twice

Bōiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Boii, a Gallic tribe

bonus, -a, -um, good

bōs, **bovis**, m., f., ox, cow; pl., cattle

brevis, **breve**, short

Britannia, -ae, f., Britain, Great Britain

Britanni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Britons

Britannicus, -a, -um, British

Brūtus, -ī, m., Brutus, a Roman name; Lucius Junius Brutus, one of the first two consuls at Rome

C

C., abbreviation for **Gāius**, a Roman first name

caedēs, **caedis**, f., slaughter, massacre

caedō, -ere, cecidi, caesum, cut down; kill, vanquish

Caelius, -a, -um, Caelian; **Caelius Mōns**, the Caelian Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome

Caeninēnsēs, -ium, m. pl., the inhabitants of Caenina

Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., Caesar, a Roman name; Gaius Julius Caesar, a famous Roman soldier and statesman

calamitās, -tātis, f., calamity, disaster

calcar, **calcāris**, n., spur

Camillus, -ī, m., Camillus, a Roman name; Furius Camillus, the conqueror of Veii

Campānia, -ae, f., Campania, a district lying southeast of Latium

capō, -ere, cēpi, captum, take, capture; **cōnsillum capere**, form a plan

Capitōlium, -ī, n., (1) the Capitol, the temple of Jupiter at Rome on the Capitoline Hill; (2) the Capitoline Hill

- captivus**, -i, *m.*, (*captiva*, -ae, *f.*), captive, prisoner
caput, *capitis*, *n.*, head
Carræ, -arum, *f. pl.*, Carrhae, a city of Asia
carrus, -i, *m.*, cart
cârus, -a, -um, dear
Casca, -ae, *m.*, Casca, a Roman name
Cassius, -i, *m.*, Cassius, a Roman name; Lucius Cassius, a Roman consul who was killed in battle with the Helvetians
castellum, -i, *n.*, fort, redoubt
castra, -orum, *n. pl.*, camp
Catô, -onis, *m.*, Cato, a Roman name
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; *abl.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of
cêdô, -ere, *cessi*, *cessum*, yield, retreat, withdraw
celeritâs, -tâtis, *f.*, speed
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly, rapidly, quickly
cêlô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, conceal
Celtae, -arum, *m. pl.*, the Celts
cênsus, -ûs, *m.*, census, enumeration
centênî, -ae, -a, *distributive num.*, a hundred each, a hundred
centum, *indecl. num.*, one hundred
centuriô, -onis, *m.*, centurion, an officer in the Roman army
certâmen, *certâminis*, *n.*, struggle
certê, *adv.*, certainly, at any rate, at least
certus, -a, -um, certain
cessô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, cease, be unused, fall into disuse
cêteri, -orum, *m. pl.*, the rest, the others
Cimberius, -i, *m.*, Cimberius, a German chief
Cincinnâtus, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus, the famous dictator
cingô, -ere, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, surround
circâ, *prep. with acc.*, near, about
circiter, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, about
circuitus, -ûs, *m.*, circuit, circumference
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around
circumdô, -dare, -dedi, -datum, surround
circumveniô, -venire, -vêni, -ventum, surround
circus, -i, *m.*, circle, enclosure for sports, race course
citerior, *citerius*, *comparative adj.*, nearer, hither
citrâ, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of
civîlis, -e, belonging to citizens, civil; courteous
civis, *civis*, *m., f.*, citizen
civitâs, -tâtis, *f.*, state, city
clârus, -a, -um, famous, distinguished
Claudius, -i, *m.*, Claudius, a Roman name
claudô, -ere, *clausi*, *clausum*, close
Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra, queen of Egypt
cliêns, *clientis*, *m.*, dependent
cloâca, -ae, *f.*, sewer
Cn., abbreviation for Gnaeus, a Roman first name
coepi, *coepisse*, *coeptum*, defective verb, began
coerceô, -êre, -ui, -itum, restrain
cognôscô, -ere, *cognôvi*, *cognitum*, find out; *perf.*, know

- cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactum**, collect, compel
- cohors, cohortis, f.**, cohort, *a division of the legion*
- cohortor, -āri, -ātus sum**, urge, encourage
- Collātinus, -i, m.**, *a Roman name; Tarquinius Collatinus, one of the first two consuls at Rome*
- collēga, -ae, m.**, colleague
- colligō, -ere, collēgī, collēctum**, collect
- collis, -is, m.**, hill
- collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, place, station
- colloquium, -i, n.**, conference, interview
- colloquor, colloqui, collocūtus sum**, confer, converse
- colō, -ere, colui, cultum**, till, cultivate
- commeātus, -ūs, m.**, supplies
- commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, call to mind, mention
- comminus, adv.**, hand to hand
- committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum**, unite, do; **proelium committere**, begin battle
- commoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum**, stir up, arouse
- communis, -e**, common
- compāreō, -ēre, -ui**, appear, be seen
- comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, prepare, get ready
- compleō, -āre, -ēvi, -ētum**, fill, fill up, complete
- complūrēs, -a (-ia)**, several, some
- compōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum**, arrange, settle
- comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēsum**, seize
- concidō, -ere, concidi, fall**, be slain
- concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum**, cut to pieces, kill
- concilium, -i, n.**, council
- conditor, -tōris, m.**, founder
- condiciō, -ōnis, f.**, condition, terms
- condō, -ere, condidi, conditum**, found, build; put away
- condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, pardon
- condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum**, bring together, collect
- cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum**, collect; **sē cōnferre**, to withdraw
- cōnficiō, -ere, cōnfēci, cōnfectum**, finish, complete
- cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum**, *semi-deponent*, trust
- cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossam**, stab
- cōnfusus, -a, -um**, confused, lacking order
- congregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, collect
- coniciō, -ere, conieci, coniectum**, throw
- coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūctum**, unite
- coniūrātus, -i, m.**, a conspirator
- coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, league together, conspire, plot
- cōnor, -āri, cōnātus sum**, try, attempt
- cōnscribō, -ere, cōnscripsi, cōnscriptum**, enroll
- consecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, dedicate, deify
- cōnsenēscō, -ere, cōnsenui**, grow old
- cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, protect, spare

- captivus**, -i, *m.*, (*captiva*, -ae, *f.*), captive, prisoner
caput, *capitis*, *n.*, head
Carræ, -arum, *f. pl.*, Carrhae, a city of Asia
carrus, -i, *m.*, cart
cārus, -a, -um, dear
Casca, -ae, *m.*, Casca, a Roman name
Cassius, -i, *m.*, Cassius, a Roman name; Lucius Cassius, a Roman consul who was killed in battle with the Helvetians
castellum, -i, *n.*, fort, redoubt
castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp
Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cato, a Roman name
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; *abl.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of
cēdō, -ere, *cessi*, *cessum*, yield, retreat, withdraw
celeritās, -tātis, *f.*, speed
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly, rapidly, quickly
cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, conceal
Celtae, -arum, *m. pl.*, the Celts
cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, census, enumeration
centēni, -ae, -a, *distributive num.*, a hundred each, a hundred
centum, *indecl. num.*, one hundred
centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion, an officer in the Roman army
certāmen, **certāminis**, *n.*, struggle
certē, *adv.*, certainly, at any rate, at least
certus, -a, -um, certain
cessō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, cease, be unused, fall into disuse
cēteri, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the rest, the others
Cimberius, -i, *m.*, Cimberius, a German chief
Cincinnātus, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus, the famous dictator
cingō, -ere, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, surround
circā, *prep. with acc.*, near, about
circiter, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, about
circuitus, -ūs, *m.*, circuit, circumference
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around
circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, surround
circumveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, surround
circus, -i, *m.*, circle, enclosure for sports, race course
citerior, *citerius*, *comparative adj.*, nearer, hither
citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of
civilis, -e, belonging to citizens, civil; courteous
cīvis, *cīvis*, *m., f.*, citizen
cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, state, city
clārus, -a, -um, famous, distinguished
Claudius, -i, *m.*, Claudius, a Roman name
claudō, -ere, *clausi*, *clausum*, close
Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra, queen of Egypt
cliēns, *clientis*, *m.*, dependent
cloāca, -ae, *f.*, sewer
Cn., abbreviation for *Gnaeus*, a Roman first name
coepi, *coepisse*, *coeptum*, defective verb, began
coerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, restrain
cognōscō, -ere, *cognōvi*, *cognitum*, find out; *perf.*, know

- cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactum**, collect, compel
cohors, cohortis, f., cohort, *a division of the legion*
cohortor, -āri, -ātus sum, urge, encourage
Collātinus, -i, m., *a Roman name; Tarquinius Collatinus, one of the first two consuls at Rome*
collēga, -ae, m., colleague
colligō, -ere, collēgī, collēctum, collect
collis, -is, m., hill
collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, place, station
colloquium, -i, n., conference, interview
colloquor, colloqui, collocūtus sum, confer, converse
colō, -ere, colui, cultum, till, cultivate
commeātus, -ūs, m., supplies
commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call to mind, mention
comminus, adv., hand to hand
committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, unite, do; **proelium committere**, begin battle
commoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, stir up, arouse
communis, -e, common
compāreō, -āre, -ui, appear, be seen
comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare, get ready
compleō, -āre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill, fill up, complete
complūrēs, -a (-ia), several, some
compōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, arrange, settle
comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsum, seize
- concidō, -ere, concidī, fall**, be slain
concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, cut to pieces, kill
concilium, -i, n., council
conditor, -tōris, m., founder
condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, terms
condō, -ere, condidī, conditum, found, build; put away
condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, pardon
condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, bring together, collect
cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, collect; **sē cōnferre**, to withdraw
cōnficiō, -ere, cōnfēci, cōnfectum, finish, complete
cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, semi-deponēt, trust
cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossam, stab
cōnfusus, -a, -um, confused, lacking order
congregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, collect
coniciō, -ere, conieci, coniectum, throw
coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūntum, unite
coniūrātus, -i, m., a conspirator
coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, league together, conspire, plot
cōnor, -āri, cōnātus sum, try, attempt
cōnscribō, -ere, cōnscripsi, cōnscriptum, enroll
consecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, dedicate, deify
cōnsenescō, -ere, cōnsenui, grow old
cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, protect, spare

- Cōnsidius**, -i, m., Considius, an officer in Caesar's army
considō, -ere, consēdī, consessum, encamp
cōnsilium, -i, n., plan, counsel, judgment, advice
cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, perceive, see, catch sight of
cōstituō, -ere, cōstitui, cōstitūtum, decide, determine; establish, appoint; construct; station, draw up
cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, f., habit, practice, usage
cōsul, cōsulis, m., consul, one of the two chief magistrates of Rome, elected annually
cōsulāris, -e, consular, of the consul; masculine as noun, ex-consul
cōsulātus, -ūs, m., consulship
contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum, fight, contend; hasten, go to
contentiō, -ōnis, f., struggle
contentus, -a, -um, contented, satisfied
contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, restrain
contrā, prep. with acc., against
contrādicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, oppose
conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, come together, assemble
convertō, -ere, converti, conversum, turn, change; signa convertere, wheel about
convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call together, summon
cōpia, -ae, f., plenty, supply; pl., forces, troops
Corioli, -ōrum, m. pl., Corioli, a town in Latium
Cornēlia, -ae, f., Cornelia, name of a girl or woman
Cornēlius, -i, m., Cornelius, a Roman name
cornū, cornūs, n., horn; wing (of an army)
corpus, corporis, n., body
corrumpō, -ere, corrūpi, corruptum, destroy, corrupt, seduce
cotidiē, adv., daily, every day
Crassus, -i, m., Crassus, a Roman name; Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of the members of the First Triumvirate
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, numerous
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe
creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, create; elect, appoint
Crustumini, -ōrum, m. pl., the inhabitants of Crustumium
cum, prep. with abl., with
cum, conj., when, since, although
cupiditās, -tātis, f., desire
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond
cupiō, -ere, cupi, cupitum, wish, desire
cūr, adv., why?
cūria, -ae, f., the senate house

D

- damnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, condemn
dē, prep. with abl., from, about, concerning (original meaning, down from)
dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, owe, ought
dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, withdraw; die
decem, indecl. num., ten
decemvir, -i, m., decemvir, a mem-

- ber of a body of officials consisting of ten men*
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, decide; decree, vote
dēcertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight to a finish; **proeliō dēcertāre**, fight a (decisive) battle
decimus, -a, -um, tenth
dēdō, -ere, dēdidi, dēditum, yield, surrender, give up
dēfendō, -ere, dēfendi, dēfensum, defend
dēfēnsor, -sōris, M., defender
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, report; confer, bestow
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, exhausted
dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectum, cast down, dislodge; disappoint
dēinde, adv., next, thereupon, then
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, destroy, blot out
dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, select, choose
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, show, point out
dēmum, adv., at last
dēnique, adv., finally
dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, lay waste
dēprecātiō, -ōnis, F., warding off by prayer, pleading
dēscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, mark off, divide
dēsērō, -ere, dēsēruī, dēsertum, desert, abandon
dētergēō, -tergēre, -tersī, -tersum, wipe away
dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, prevent, deter, hinder
deus, -ī, M., a god
dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right hand
dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum, say
dictātor, -tōris, M., dictator
dictātūra, -ae, F., dictatorship
diēs, -ēi, M. and F., day
difficilis, -e, difficult
difficultās, -tātis, F., difficulty
dignitās, -tātis, F., dignity, authority, official position, rank
diligenter, adv., diligently
dimicātiō, -ōnis, F., struggle
dimicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight, struggle
dimittō, -ere, dimisi, dimissum, send away, dismiss
diripiō, -ere, diripui, direptum, tear apart; plunder
discēdō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, withdraw
ditissimus, -a, -um, *superlative adj.*, richest
diū, adv., long, for a long time
diūturnitās, -tātis, F., long duration
dives, gen. divitis, wealthy, rich
Diviciācus, -ī, M., Diviciacus, a *Haeduan chief*
dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum, divide, separate
divisus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj., divided
dō, dare, dedi, datum, give
doceō, -ēre, docui, doctum, teach, tell
domicilium, -ī, N., home, dwelling place, residence
dominus, -ī, M., master
domō, -āre, -uī, -itum, subdue
domus, -ūs, F., house, home
dōnum, -ī, N., gift, present
dubietās, -tātis, F., doubt

ducenti, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, two hundred
dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum, lead; construct; consider, think
dum, conj., until; while
Dumnorix, -igis, m., Dumnorix, a *Haeduan chief*
duo, duae, duo, *numeral adj.*, two
duodecim, *numeral adj.*, twelve
duodēviginti, *numeral adj.*, eighteen
duodecimus, -a, -um, twelfth
duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, double
dux, ducis, m., leader, guide; general

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from
ēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead out
efficiō, -ere, effici, effectum, bring about, cause
ego, mei, *personal pronoun*, I (*pl.*, nōs)
ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out from, set out, depart
ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum, drive out
emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, buy
enim, conj. (*post positive*), for
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, make known, report, disclose
eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, go
eō, adv., to that place, there (*with expressions of motion*)
Ēpirus, -i, f., Epirus, a district of Greece
epistula, -ae, f., letter
eques, equitis, m., cavalryman, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry
equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry
equus, -i, m., horse

ergō, adv., therefore
errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wander
Esquilius, -i, m., the Esquiline, one of the seven hills of Rome
et, conj., and
etiam, adv., even, also
Euphrātēs, -is, m., the Euphrates
ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsi, ēvāsum, escape
excēdō, -ere, excessi, excessum, withdraw, go out
excidium, -i, n., downfall, destruction
excidō, -ere, excidi, excisum, demolish
exēō, -ire, -ii or -ivi, -itum, go forth, go out of, go from
exercitātus, -a, -um, trained
exercitus, -ūs, m., army
exigō, -ere, exēgi, exactum, drive out
exiguus, -a, -um, small
existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think
exōrdium, -i, m., beginning, origin
expellō, -ere, expuli, expulsum, drive out
experior, -iri, expertus sum, try
explōrātor, -tōris, m., scout
explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, explore
expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, take by storm, capture
exsecrandus, -a, -um, detestable
expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wait for, expect
exulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, be in exile
extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, farthest part of, last

F

Fabius, -i, m., Fabius, a Roman name
Fabius, -a, -um, of the Fabii, Fabian

facile, *adv.*, easily
facilis, -e, easy
faciō, -ere, **fēci**, **factum**, make, do
factiō, **factiōnis**, *F.*, faction, party
facultās, -tātis, *F.*, opportunity, supply
Falisci, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, Falerii, a city of Etruria
famēs, **famis**, *F.*, hunger
familia, -ae, *F.*, household, family
fātāliter, *adv.*, according to fate, by the decree of fate
Faustus, -i, *M.*, Faustus, a Roman name
faveō, -ēre, **fāvi**, **fautūrus**, favor
fēlix, **fēlicis**, happy, fortunate
fēmina, -ae, *F.*, woman
ferē, *adv.*, nearly, about
fermē, *adv.*, about
ferō, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lātum**, bear, carry, bring
ferus, -a, -um, fierce
Fidēnae, -ārum, *F. pl.*, Fidenae, an ancient town near Rome
Fidēnātēs, -ium, *M. pl.*, the inhabitants of Fidenae
fidēs, -ei, *F.*, faith, confidence
filia, -ae, *F.*, daughter
filius, -i, *M.*, son
finis, -is, *M.*, limit, end; *pl.*, territories, boundaries
finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring;
finitimi, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, neighbors
fiō, **feri**, **factus sum**, *used as passive of facio*, be made, be done; happen, become
firmus, -a, -um, firm
fiēō, **fiēre**, **fiēvi**, **fiētum**, weep
fiētus, -ūs, *M.*, weeping
fiuctus, -ūs, *M.*, wave
flūmen, **flūminis**, *N.*, river
fluō, -ere, **flūxi**, **flūxum**, flow

fortis, -e, brave
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
fortūna, -ae, *F.*, fortune
fossa, -ae, *F.*, ditch
frāter, **frātris**, *M.*, brother
frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain;
rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, provisions
frūmentum, -i, *M.*, grain
fuga, -ae, *F.*, flight
fugiō, -ere, **fūgi**, **fugitūrus**, flee
fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, put to flight, rout
fulmen, **fulminis**, *N.*, thunderbolt
fundō, -ere, **fūdi**, **fūsum**, pour out, shed
Fūrius, -i, *M.*, Furius, a Roman name

G

Gabii, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, Gabii, an old city of Latium
Gallia, -ae, *F.*, Gaul
Gallus, -i, *M.*, a Gaul
gaudeō, -ēre, **gāvisus sum**, rejoice, be glad
Genava, -ae, *F.*, Geneva
gener, **generi**, *M.*, son-in-law
genitus, -a, -um, sprung from, descended from
gēns, **gentis**, *F.*, tribe, nation, race
genus, **generis**, *N.*, birth; family
Germānia, -ae, *F.*, Germany
Germāni, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Germans
gerō, -ere, **gessi**, **gestum**, carry; bellum gerere, wage war
gladius, -i, *M.*, sword
glōria, -ae, *F.*, glory
glōrior, -āri, **glōriātus sum**, boast
Graecia, -ae, *F.*, Greece

grātia, -ae, *f.*, favor, good will,
gratitude
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing
gravis, -e, heavy, serious, hard to
bear
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, severely
gravor, -āri, **gravātus sum**, be un-
willing

H

habēō, -ēre, -nī, -itum, have, hold
habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, live,
dwell
Haeduus, -ī, *m.*, a Haeduan; *pl.*,
the Haeduans, *a tribe of Gaul*
Helvētīi, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Hel-
vetians
Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, this; *pl.*, these
hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, winter,
spend the winter
hinc, *adv.*, from here, from this
point, after this
Hispania, -ae, *f.*, Spain
hodiē, *adv.*, today
homō, **hominis**, *m.*, man, human
being
honestus, -a, -um, honorable
honor, -ōris, *m.*, honor, office
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour
Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horatius, *a Roman*
name; Horatius Pulvillus, *suc-*
cessor to Lucretius Tricipitinus
in the consulship
hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, urge, en-
courage
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden
Hostilius, -ī, *m.*, Hostilius, *a Ro-*
man name
hostis, -is, *m. and f.*, enemy, pub-
lic enemy; *pl.*, the enemy

I

iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw
iam, *adv.*, now, already
Iāniculum, -ī, *N.*, the Janiculum,
a hill west of the Tiber
ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place
Iccius, -ī, *m.*, Iccius, *a chief of the*
Remi
(icō), **icere**, **icī**, **ictum**, strike
idem, **eadem**, **idem**, same, the
same
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, appro-
priate
igitur, *adv.*, therefore
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire
ille, **illa**, **illud**, that; *pl.*, those
Illyricum, -ī, *N.*, Illyria, *a region*
bordering on the eastern coast of
the Adriatic Sea
immānis, -e, enormous, very great;
fierce
impedimentum, -ī, *N.*, hindrance;
pl., baggage
impediō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, hinder
impeditus, -a, -um, impeded, hin-
dered, at a disadvantage
impendeō, -ēre, overhang, impend
imperium, -ī, *N.*, power, authority,
command, supreme power; reign
imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, com-
mand, order; govern, rule
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, impetuos-
ity, violence
impiger, -gra, -grum, energetic,
industrious
impigrē, *adv.*, industriously, ener-
getically
impleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum,
complete, finish
implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, entreat,
ask for, ask, implore

imprōvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly
in, *prep. with acc.*, into
in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on
incendō, -ere, **incendī**, **incēsum**,
 set on fire, burn
inchoō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, begin
incipiō, -ere, **incēpi**, **inceptum**,
 begin
incognitus, -a, -um, unknown
incolō, -ere, **incolui**, inhabit
incolumis, -e, safe
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible
incursus, -ūs, *M.*, attack
incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, reprimand
inde, *adv.*, from that place, from
 there; next
indiciū, -i, *M.*, disclosure, infor-
 mation; **per indiciū**, through
 informers
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, bring
 upon, cause, arouse; **bellum**
inferre, make war on
infinītus, -a, -um, countless
ingēns, *gen. ingentis*, huge, very
 great
ingredior, **ingredi**, **ingressus sum**,
 go into, enter, invade; *some-*
times followed by intrā and ac-
cusative
inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly,
 hostile
inimicus, -i, *M.*, enemy
iniquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, un-
 just
inīfūria, -ae, *F.*, injury, injustice,
 wrong, affront
innumerus, -a, -um, countless, in-
 numerable
insidiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*, treachery;
 plot, ambush
insigne, **insignis**, *N.*, badge, deco-
 ration

insolēns, *gen.*, **insolentis**, arrogant
insolenter, *adv.*, insolently
instituō, -ere, **institui**, **institutum**,
 set up, establish
Instruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūc-
 tum, draw up, arrange
insula, -ae, *F.*, island
integer, -gra, -grum, whole, entire
intelligō, -ere, **intellēxi**, **intellēc-**
tum, know
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between,
 among
intercludō, -cludere, -clūsi, -clū-
 sum, cut off
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,
 kill
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile
intervenīō, -venire, -vēni, -ven-
 tum, come between, intervene
intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, into
intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, enter
intueor, -eri, **intuitus sum**, look at,
 look upon
inveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum,
 find
invicem or in vicem, *adv.*, in turn,
 in succession
invidia, -ae, *F.*, envy, hatred, un-
 popularity
invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, invite
invitus, -a, -um, unwilling
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, himself, herself,
 itself
Irātus, -a, -um, angry, angry at
is, **ea**, **id**, this, that; he, she, it
iste, **ista**, **istud**, that of yours,
 that
ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a way
Italia, -ae, *F.*, Italy
itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly
item, *adv.*, also

iter, *itineris*, *N.*, journey, march,
road, route
iterum, *adv.*, again
Iuba, *-ae*, *M.*, Juba, an African
king
iubeō, *-ēre*, *iussī*, *iussum*, order,
command
iūdex, *iūdicis*, *M.*, judge
iūgerum, *-ī* (*gen. pl.* *iūgerum*),
N., juger, acre (a little less than
two-thirds of an English acre)
iūgum, *-ī*, *N.*, yoke; ridge (of hills
or mountains)
Iūlius, *-ī*, *M.*, Julius, a Roman
name
iungō, *-ere*, *iūnxī*, *iunctum*, join,
annex
Iūnius, *-ī*, *M.*, Junius, a Roman
name
Iuppiter, *Iovis*, *M.*, Jupiter
iūstitia, *-ae*, *F.*, justice
iuvenilis, *-e*, youthful
iuenis, *-is*, *M.*, young man
iuvō, *-āre*, *iūvi*, *iūtum*, help, assist

L

L, abbreviation for *Lūcius*, a
Roman first name.
Labiēnus, *-ī*, *M.*, Labienus, an offi-
cer in Caesar's army
labōrō, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, labor,
work, suffer
laccēō, *-ere*, *laccēvī*, *laccēsitum*,
harass, attack
lacrima, *-ae*, *F.*, tear
lacrimābilis, *-e*, lamentable
lapis, *lapidis*, *M.*, stone
Larcus, *-ī*, *M.*, Larcus, a Roman
name
lātē, *adv.*, widely, extensively
lateō, *-ēre*, *-uī*, lurk, remain con-
cealed

Latīnī, *-ōrum*, *M. pl.*, the Latins,
the inhabitants of Latium
lātītūdō, *-inis*, *F.*, width
latrō, *latrōnis*, *M.*, brigand, robber
latus, *lateris*, *N.*, side, flank
lātus, *-a*, *-um*, wide
laudō, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, praise
laus, *laudis*, *F.*, praise
lēgātus, *-ī*, *M.*, lieutenant, envoy
legiō, *legiōnis*, *F.*, legion
legō, *-ere*, *lēgi*, *lēctum*, choose;
read
lēx, *lēgis*, *F.*, law
Lepidus, *-ī*, *M.*, Lepidus, a Roman
name
liber, *libri*, *M.*, book
liber, *libera*, *liberum*, free
liberāliter, *adv.*, generously, gra-
ciously
liberī, *-ōrum*, *M. pl.*, children (the
free members of the household)
liberō, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, free, re-
lease, extricate
libertās, *-tātis*, *F.*, liberty
licet, *licēre*, *licuit*, impersonal
verb, it is permitted
Licīnius, *-ī*, *M.*, Licinius, a Roman
name
locus, *-ī*, *M.* (usually neuter in *pl.*),
place
longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance, by
far
longitūdō, *-inis*, *F.*, length
longus, *-a*, *-um*, long
loquor, *loqui*, *locūtus sum*, speak
lōrica, *-ae*, *F.*, coat of mail
Lucretia, *-ae*, *F.*, Lueretia, a Roman
matron whose suicide, because
of having suffered outrage from
the son of Tarquinius Superbus,
caused the expulsion of the kings
from Rome

Lucretius, -i, M., *Lucretius, a Roman name; Spurius Lucretius Tricipitinus, one of the early consuls at Rome*

lūdus, -i, M., *game, sport*

lūgēō, -ēre, **lūxi**, **lūctum**, *mourn, mourn for*

lūna, -ae, F., *moon*

lūx, **lūcis**, F., *light*

M

M., *abbreviation for Mārcus, a Roman first name*

Macedonia, -ae, F., *Macedonia*

magis, *adv. (comparative of magnopere), more*

magister -tri, M. *master; magister equitum, master of the horse*

magnitūdō, -inis, F., *size, greatness, magnitude*

magnopere, *adv., greatly*

magnus, -a, -um, *large; Pompēius*

Magnus, *Pompey the Great*

male, *adv., badly*

mālō, **mālle**, **mālui**, *prefer*

malus, -a, -um, *bad, wicked, injurious, harmful*

Mām., *abbreviation for Māmercus, a Roman first name*

maneō, -ēre, **mānsi**, **mānsūrus**, *remain*

manus, -ūs, F., *hand, band, company*

Mārcellus, -i, M., *Marcellus, a Roman name*

Mārcius, -i, M., *a Roman name; Ancus Marcius, the fourth king of Rome*

mare maris, N., *sea*

maritus, -i, M., *husband*

Marius, i, M., *Marius, a Roman name*

Mārs, **Mārtis**, M., *Mars, the Roman god of war*

māter, **mātris**, F., *mother*

mātrōna, -ae, F., *matron, married woman*

Mauritānia, -ae, F., *Mauretania, a country of Africa*

maximē, *adv., superl. of magnopere*

medius, -a, -um, *middle, the middle of; in mediō colle, half way up the hill*

memini, **meminisse**, *defective verb, remember*

memoria, -ae, F., *memory*

mena, **mentis**, F., *mind, disposition, attitude*

mēnsis, **mēnsis**, M., *month*

mereor, **merēri**, **meritus sum**, *deserve*

metus, -ūs, M., *fear*

meus, -a, -um, *mine*

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *depart*

miles, **militis**, M., *soldier*

miliārium, -i, N., *milestone*

militāris, -e, *military; rēs militāris, warfare, military science*

militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *serve as a soldier*

millie, *indecl. num., a thousand*

minimē, *adv. (superlative of parum), least*

minus, *adv. (comparative), less*

miser, **misera**, **miserum**, *unhappy, unfortunate*

Mithridātēs, -is, M., *Mithridates*

mittō, -ere, **miſi**, **miſsum**, *send*

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *warn, advise, remind*

mōns, **montis**, M., *mountain*

mora, -ae, F., *delay*

morbus, -i, M., *disease*

morior, mori, mortuus sum, die
moror, morāri, morātus sum, delay
mors, mortis, *f.*, death
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom
moveō, -āre, mōvi, mōtum, move,
 cause, stir up
mox, adv., soon, afterwards
multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, large number,
 multitude
multus, -a, -um, much; *pl.*, many
Munda, -ae, *f.*, Munda, a city of
 Spain
mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, fortify
mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall
mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, change

N

nam, conj., for
nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, be born
Nasua, -ae, *m.*, Nasua, a German
 chief
nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, inhabitant
 of a state
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature
nātus, -a, -um, *see* **nāscor**
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat
nē, adv., not; *conj.*, that . . . not
nec, see neque
necessitās, -tātis, *f.*, necessity, ur-
 gency
necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, kill
nēmō, dat. nēminī (*no gen or abl.*),
m., no one
nepōs, nepōtis, *m.*, grandson
Nilus, -i, *m.*, the Nile
neque or nec, conj., nor, and . . .
 not; *neque* . . . *neque*, neither
 . . . nor
Nervii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Nervii,
 a tribe of Belgians

nesciō, -ire, -ivi, not know
neuter, -tra, -trum, neither
nihil, *N. indecl.*, nothing
nisi, conj., unless
nōbilis, -e, well known, of noble
 birth
nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*, nobility, the
 nobles, aristocracy
noceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum (*with da-*
tive), injure
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling,
 not wish
nōmen, nōminis, *n.*, name
nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, name,
 call
nōn, adv., not
nōnāgēsīmus, -a, -um, ninetyeth
nōndum, adv., not yet
nōn numquam, adv., sometimes
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth
noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours
novem, indecl. num., nine
Noviodūnum, -i, *N.*, Noviodunum,
 a town of Gaul
novissīmus, -a, -um, superlative of
novus, newest, last; **novissīmum**
agmen, rear line
novus, -a, -um, new
nox, noctis, *f.*, night
nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, strip,
 leave unprotected
nūllus, -a, -um, no, none
Numa, -ae, *m.*, Numa, a Roman
 name; Numa Pompilius, the
 second king of Rome
numerus, -i, *m.*, number
nummus, -i, *m.*, coin, money
numquam, adv., never
nunc, adv., now
nūntius, -i, *m.*, message, messen-
 ger

O

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
obliviscor, **oblivisci**, **oblitus sum**,
 forget

obsequor, **-sequi**, **-secutus sum**,
 yield to, submit to, be under
 the authority of

obses, **obsidis**, *M.*, hostage
obsideo, **-sidere**, **-sedi**, **-sessum**, be-
 siege, blockade

Oceanus, **-i**, *M.*, the ocean

occidō, **-ere**, **occidi**, **occisum**, kill
occupo, **-āre**, **-avi**, **-atum**, seize,
 take possession of

Ocelum, **-i**, *N.*, Ocelum, a town of
 Gaul

octāvus, **-a**, **-um**, eighth; **octāvus**
decimus, eighteenth

octō, *indecl. num.*, eight

octōgintā, *indecl. num.*, eighty

oculus, **-i**, *M.*, eye

olim, *adv.*, formerly, once

omen, **ōminis**, *N.*, omen

omniō, *adv.*, at all

omnis, **-e**, all, every

onus, **oneris**, *N.*, burden, weight

opiniō, **-ōnis**, *F.*, opinion, expecta-
 tion, belief

oportet, **eportēre**, **oportuit**, *imper-*
sonal verb, it is necessary (*trans-*
lated as personal verb, one ought)

oppidānus, **-i**, *M.*, a townsman, in-
 habitant of a town

oppidum, **-i**, *N.*, town

oppugnō, **-āre**, **-avi**, **-atum**, attack

opus, **operis**, *N.*, work, labor, task

orbis, **orbis**, *M.*, circle; **orbis ter-**
rārūm, the world

ordinō, **-āre**, **-avi**, **-atum**, arrange

ordō, **ordinis**, *M.*, order, rank

Orgetorix, **-igis**, *M.*, Orgetorix, a
Helvetian chief

Oriēns, **Orientis**, *M.*, the East, the
 Orient

orior, **-iri**, **ortus sum**, arise, spring
 up

Crōdēs, **-is**, *M.*, Orodes, a king of
 the Parthians

ostium, **-i**, *N.*, door, mouth

P

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius**

pābulum, **-i**, *N.*, forage, fodder

pacō, **-āre**, **-avi**, **-atum**, subdue,
 make peaceful

paene, *adv.*, almost

Palaeopharsālus, **-i**, *M.*, Old Phar-
 salus

Palātinus, **-a**, **-um**, Palatine

pandō, **-ere**, **pandi**, **passum**, stretch
 out, hold out

parātus, **-a**, **-um**, prepared

parcō, **-ere**, **peperci**, **parsum**, spare

parō, **-āre**, **-avi**, **-atum**, prepare

pars, **partis**, *F.*, part

Parthi, **-ōrum**, *M. pl.*, the Parthi-
 ans

parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough

parvus, **-a**, **-um**, small

passus, **-ūs**, *M.*, pace ($\frac{1}{4}$ ft. $10\frac{1}{2}$
in.); **mille passūs** or **passuum**,
 one mile

pateō, **-āre**, **-ui**, extend, be open

pater, **patris**, *M.*, father

patior, **pati**, **passus sum**, permit,
 allow

patria, **-ae**, *F.*, native land, coun-
 try

patrimōnium, **-i**, *N.*, inheritance

pauci, **-ae**, **-a** (*sing. rarely used*),
 few; *M. pl. as noun*, a few

paulisper, *adv.*, for a little while

- paulum**, *adv.*, a little, somewhat
pauper, *gen.*, **pauperis**, poor
pāx, **pācis**, *F.*, peace
pecūnia, -ae, *F.*, money
pedes, **peditis**, *M.*, foot soldier;
pl., infantry
pedester, -tris, -tre, on foot, foot,
 infantry (*as adjective*)
Pedius, -i, *M.*, a Roman name;
Q. Pedius, one of Caesar's officers
pellō, -ere, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, rout,
 put to flight, drive out
per, *prep.* with *acc.*, through, by
 means of
pereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, perish, die
perditus, -a, -um, desperate, ruined
perdō, -ere, **perdidi**, **perditum**, lose
perficiō, -ere, **perfēci**, **perfectum**,
 complete
periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous
periculum, -i, *N.*, danger
permaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mān-
 sum, continue, remain
Persae, -ārum, *M. pl.*, Persians
persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suā-
 sum, persuade
perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten
 thoroughly
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, extend, pertain
perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, throw
 into confusion or disorder
pervenīō, -ire, **pervēni**, **perven-**
 tum, arrive
pēs, **pedis**, *M.*, foot
petō, -ere, **petivī** or **petiī**, **petitum**,
 seek, ask for, beg for, go to
Petrēius, -i, *M.*, Petreius, a Roman
 name
phalanx, **phalangis**, *F.*, phalanx
Pharnacēs, -is, *M.*, Pharnaces
piger, **pigra**, **pigrum**, lazy
pilum, -i, *N.*, javelin
placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please
plēbs, **plēbis**, *F.*, the common peo-
 ple, plebeians
plēnus, -a, -um, full
plūrimus, -a, -um, *see multus*
poena, -ae, *F.*, punishment, pen-
 alty
polliceor, -ēri, **pollicitus sum**,
 promise
Pōmētia, -ae, *F.*, *see Suessa*
Pompēius, -i, *M.*, Pompey, a fa-
 mous Roman general
Pompius, -i, *M.*, *see Numa*
pōnō, -ere, **posui**, **positum**, place,
 locate, pitch (a camp)
pōns, **pontis**, *M.*, bridge
Pontus, -i, *M.*, Pontus, a country
 of Asia Minor
populus, -i, *M.*, people
Porcius, -i, *M.*, Porcius, a Roman
 name
Porsenna, -ae, *M.*, Porsenna, a
 king of Etruria
porta, -ae, *F.*, gate
portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, carry
poscō, -ere, **poposci**, demand
possideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessum,
 possess, hold
possum, **posse**, **potui**, be able, can
post, *prep.* with *acc.*, behind, after;
as adv., afterwards
postea, *adv.*, afterwards
posterus, -a, -um, the following
postquam, *conj.*, after
postrēmus, -a, -um, (*superl.* of *pos-*
terus), last; *ad postrēmum*, at
 last
postridīē, *adv.*, the next day
postulātum, -i, *N.*, demand
postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, demand,
 ask

- potēns**, *gen.*, **potentis**, powerful
potentia, -ae, *F.*, power, influence
potestās, -tātis, *F.*, power
potior, **potiri**, **potitus sum**, gain possession of
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, surpass, excel
praecipuē, *adv.*, especially
praecipuus, -a, -um, distinguished, chief
praeda, -ae, *F.*, booty, spoil
praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, boast, announce
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, put in command of
praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, send ahead
praemium, -i, *N.*, reward
praeparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare, make preparations for
praesēns, *gen.*, **praesentis**, present, in person
praestāns, *gen.*, **praestantis**, distinguished, prominent
praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *transitive*, furnish, bestow; *intrans.*, surpass
praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be in charge or command of
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, more than
praetereā, *adv.*, besides
praetextus, -a, -um, bordered
praetōrius, -i, *M.*, ex-praetor
premō, -ere, **pressi**, **pressum**, press, press hard; oppress
primō, *adv.*, at first
primum, *adv.*, first
primus, -a, -um, first
princeps, **principis**, *M.*, leader, chief
principātus, -i, *M.*, leadership
prior, **prius**, *comparative adjective*, former, first
Priscus, -i, *see* **Tarquinius**
pristinus, -a, -um, former, old time
prius, *adv.*, previously
priusquam, *conj.*, before
privātus, -i, *M.*, a private citizen
prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of; for, on behalf of, in place of
probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, approve, approve of
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, advance
prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, run forward
prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead out
proelium, -i, *N.*, battle
profectiō, -ōnis, *F.*, setting out, departure
proficiscor, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, set out
prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, keep back, prevent, restrain
prōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, promise
prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, move forward
properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten
propinquus, -a, -um, neighboring, near
prōpōnō, -ere, **prōposui**, **prōpositum**, point out, explain, offer
proprius, -a, -um, own, special
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, **prōfutūrus**, benefit
prōvincia, -ae, *F.*, province; the Province, the southeastern part of Gaul

- saepe**, *adv.*, often
sagitta, -ae, *F.*, arrow
salūs, **salūtis**, *F.*, safety
satis, *adv.*, enough
saxum, -ī, *N.*, rock, stone
scelus, **sceleris**, *N.*, crime
schola, -ae, *F.*, school
sciō, **scire**, **scivī**, **scitum**, know
Scipiō, -ōnis, *M.*, Scipio, a Roman name
scūtum, -ī, *N.*, shield
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable
sed, *conj.*, but
sēdecim, *numeral adj.*, sixteen
sēditio, -ōnis, *F.*, insurrection
semel, *adv.*, once
sēmibarbarus, -a, -um, half civilized
semper, *adv.*, always
senātor, -tōris, *M.*, senator
senātus, -ūs, *M.*, senate
senectūs, -tūtis, *F.*, old age, age
senior, -ōris, *compar. of senex*, older; *as noun*, old man
Senonēs, -um, *M. pl.*, the Senones, a tribe of the Gauls
septem, *indecl. num.*, seven
septendecim, *indecl. num.*, seventeen
septimus, -a, -um, seventh
sepultūra, -ae, *F.*, burial
Sēquani, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Sequani
sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, follow
Servilius, -ī, *M.*, Servilius, a Roman name
servitūs, -tūtis, *F.*, slavery
Servius, -ī, *M.*, Servius, a Roman name; Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save
servus, -ī, *M.*, slave, servant
sex, *indecl. num.*, six
Sex, *abbreviation for Sextus*
sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty
sexcentēsimus, -a, -um, six-hundredth
sexcentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, six hundred
sextus, -a, -um, sixth; **sextus decimus**, sixteenth
Sextus, -ī, *M.*, Sextus, a Roman first name
sī, *conj.*, if
sicutī, *adv.*, just as, as
signum, -ī, *N.*, sign, signal, standard; **signa convertere**, wheel about
silva, -ae, *F.*, forest
silvestris, -tre, wooded, forest covered
Silvia, -ae, *F.*, see Rhēa
similis, -e, like, similar
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
singulāris, -e, remarkable, unusual
singulī, -ae, -a, one at a time, separate, individually
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left hand
socer, **soceri**, *M.*, father-in-law
socius, -ī, *M.*, ally
sōl, **sōlis**, *M.*, the sun
soleō, -ēre, **solitus sum**, *semi-deponent*, be accustomed
solum, *adv.*, only; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also
sōlus, -a, -um, only, alone
sonus, -ī, *M.*, sound
soror, **sorōris**, *F.*, sister
Sp., *abbreviation for Spurius*, a Roman first name
spectāculum, -ī, *N.*, show, a spectacle; **spectāculum iādōrum**, an exhibition of games

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hope
spēs, spei, F., hope
statua, -ae, F., statue
statim, adv., at once
stipendiārius, -a, -um, subject to tribute, tributary
stipendium, -i, N., tribute, tax; military service
stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus, stand
studeō, -ēre, -ui, desire, be eager for
stuprum, -i, N., defilement, dishonor
sub, prep. with acc. or abl., under, beneath; at the foot of
subducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, withdraw
subigō, -ere, subēgi, subāctum, subdue, conquer
subitō, adv., suddenly
subsequor, subsequi, subsecūtus sum, follow up, follow closely
subsidiū, -i, N., reinforcements, reserves
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, come up close to, advance; follow, succeed
successus, -ūs, M., success
sūdor, sūdōris, M., sweat, perspiration
Suebi, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Suebi, a German tribe
Suessa, -ae, F., a city of Latium, commonly called Suessa Pometia
Suessiōnēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Suesiones, a Belgian tribe
sui, reflexive pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves
Sulla, -ae, M., Sulla, a Roman name
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be
summus, -a, -um, highest, supreme; highest part of

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, take
sūmptus, -ūs, M., expense
Superbus, -i, M., *see* Tarquinius
superior, superius, compar. adj., higher; preceding, previous
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, defeat, overcome, conquer
supersedō, -sedēre, -sēdi, -sessum, refrain from
supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, survive, be left
supervenio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, come upon, surprise
supplicium, -i, N., punishment
supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bring up, furnish
supputātiō, -ōnis, F., reckoning, computation
suprā, prep. with acc., above
Surēna, -ae, M., Surena, a Parthian general
susciplō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, undertake, assume, receive
sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sustentum, sustain, withstand, hold out
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their

T

T., abbreviation for Titus, a Roman first name
tabernāculum, -i, N., tent
tam, adv., so
tamquam, adv., as if
tamen, adv., nevertheless, still
tantum, adv., so greatly; only, merely
tantus, -a, -um, so great
tardē, adv., slowly
tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hinder, check

- Tarquinius**, -i, m., Tarquinius, *the name of two Roman kings; Tarquinius Priscus (Tarquin the Elder) was the fifth of the kings, and Tarquinius Superbus (Tarquin the Proud) was the seventh*
- tegō**, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover, protect
- tēlum**, -i, n., weapon
- tempestās**, -tātis, f., storm
- templum**, -i, n., temple
- tempus**, temporis, n., time
- tendō**, -ere, tetendi, tentum or tēnsū, hold out, extend
- teneō**, -ēre, -ui, hold
- ter**, adv., three times
- tergum**, -i, n., back
- terra**, -ae, f., land, earth
- terreō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, frighten, terrify
- territōrium**, -i, n., territory
- tertiō**, adv., for the third time
- tertius**, -a, -um, third
- testāmentum**, -i, n., will
- Thessālia**, -ae, f., Thessaly
- Tiberis**, -is, m., the Tiber
- timeō**, -ēre, -ui, fear
- timor**, timōris, m., fear
- Titurius**, -i, m., a Roman name; Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's officers
- toga**, -ae, f., toga
- tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, lift; take away
- Tolumnius**, -i, m., Tolumnius, a king of Veii
- tot**, indecl. adj., so many
- tōtus**, -a, -um, all, entire
- trādō**, -ere, trādidī, trāditum, surrender, give up
- trādūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead across
- trāns**, prep. with acc., across, beyond
- trānseō**, -ire, -ii or -ivi, -itum, cross
- trānsgridior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, cross
- trānsportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, convey across
- trecentēsimus**, -a, -um, three hundredth
- trecenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj., three hundred
- trēs**, tria, gen. trium, three
- tribūnus**, -i, m., tribune
- tribūtum**, -i, n., tribute
- triciēs**, adv., thirty times
- Tricipitinus**, -i, m., see *Lucretius*
- triduum**, -i, n., three days
- trigintā**, indecl. num., thirty
- triumphō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, celebrate a triumph
- tricēsimus**, -a, -um, thirtieth
- Trōia**, -ae, f., Troy
- tū**, tui, personal pronoun, you; pl., vōs
- tuba**, -ae, f., trumpet
- Tulingi**, -ōrum, m. pl., the Tulingi, a Gallic tribe
- Tullius**, -i, m., Tullius, a Roman name
- Tullus**, -i, m., Tullus, a Roman name; Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome
- tum**, adv., then
- tumultus**, -ūs, m., disturbance, insurrection, uprising
- turris**, -is, f., tower
- Tuscia**, -ae, f., Etruria
- Tusci**, -ōrum, m. pl., the Etruscans, inhabitants of Etruria

Tusculum, -i, N., Tusculum, an ancient town not far from Rome
tutor, **tutoris**, M., guardian, protector
tutus, -a, -um, safe
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours
tyrannicus, -a, -um, despotic, tyrannical

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when
Ubii, -orum, M. *pl.*, the Ubii, a German tribe
ullus, -a, -um, any
ulterior, **ulterius**, *comparative adj.*, farther
ultimus, -a, -um, *superl.*, farthest, last
ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond
umquam, *adv.*, ever
unā, *adv.*, together, at the same time
undecim, *numeral adj.*, eleven
undecimus, -a, -um, eleventh
undeviginti, *numeral adj.*, nineteen
undique, *adv.*, on all sides
universus, -a, -um, all together, entire, all
unus, -a, -um, one
urbs, **urbis**, F., city
usque, *adv.*, as far as
usus, -us, M., use, experience, advantage
ut, *conj.*, that, in order that
ut, *adv.*, as
uter, -tra, -trum, which of two
uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, each of two, each
utilis, -e, useful
utor, **uti**, **usus sum**, use

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides
uxor, **uxoris**, F., wife

V

vacuus, -a, -um, vacant
Valerius, -i, Valerius, a Roman name
validus, -a, -um, strong, powerful
vallēs, **vallis**, F., valley
Varrō, **Varrōnis**, M., Varro, a Roman name
Vārus, -i, M., Varus, a Roman name
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste
vehementer, *adv.*, severely
Vei, **Veiōrum**, M. *pl.*, Veii, an ancient town of Etruria
Vēientāni, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, same as **Vēientēs**
Vēientēs, -ium, M. *pl.*, the inhabitants of Veii
vel, *conj.*, or
vēndō, -ere, **vēndidī**, **vēnditum**, sell
veniō, -ire, **vēni**, **ventum**, come
ventus, -i, M., wind
vereor, -ēri, **veritus sum**, fear
vergō, -ere, slope
vertō, -ere, **verti**, **versum**, turn
vērūm, *adv.*, but
Vesontio, -ōnis, M., Vesontio, a town of Gaul, now Besançon
vesper, **vesperī**, M., evening
Vestālis, -e, Vestal, of Vesta
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours
veterānus, -a, -um, veteran
Veturia, -ae, Veturia, a woman's name
vetus, **veteris**, old, former, of long standing

vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum , lay waste, overrun, harass, plunder	Virginus, -i, M. , Virginus, <i>a Roman name</i>
via, -ae, F. , street, road, way	virgō, -inis, F. , virgin, maiden, girl, young woman
vicésimus, -a, -um , twentieth	virtūs, -tūtis, F. , courage, manliness
vicinus, -a, -um , near, neighboring	vis, F. , force, violence; <i>pl.</i> strength
vicem, see invicem	vita, -ae, F. , life
victor, -tōris, M. , conqueror	vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum , avoid
victōria, -ae, F. , victory	vix, adv. , scarcely, with difficulty
vicus, -i, M. , village	vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum , call
videō, -ēre, vidī, visum , see; <i>pass.</i> as <i>dep.</i> , seem	volō, velle, voluī , wish, be willing
vigilia, -ae, F. , watch	Volsci, -ōrum, M. pl. , Volscians
viginti, indecl. num. , twenty	Volumnia, -ae, F. , Volumnia, <i>a woman's name</i>
Viminālis, -is, M. , the Viminal, <i>one of the seven hills of Rome</i>	voluntās, -tātis, F. , wish, will
vincō, -ere, vici, victum , conquer, defeat	vōx, vōcis, F. , voice, word, utterance
vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum , avenge	vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum , wound
vir, viri, M. , man	vulnus, vulneris, N. , a wound

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able, be able, possum, posse, potuī
absent, be absent, absum, abesse,
 āfui, āfutūrus
account, on account of, propter,
prep. with acc.
accustomed, be accustomed, soleō,
 -ēre, solitus sum
advance, prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi,
 -cessum
advice, cōnsilium, cōnsili, N.
again, rursus, iterum, *advs.*
aid, auxilium, auxili, N.
all, omnis, omne
ally, socius, -i, M.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um
also, item, *adv.*
although, cum, *conj.*
always, semper, *adv.*
among, apud, *prep. with acc.*
and, et, atque, -que, *conjs.*
angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, animālis, N.
another, alius, alia, aliud
answer, respōnsum, -i, N.
any one (*in a negative sentence*),
 quisquam
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
approve, approve of, probō, -āre,
 -āvi, -ātum
Aquitanians, Aquitāni, -ōrum,
 M. pl.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, M.
arm, armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
arms, arma, armōrum, N. pl.
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.
arrive, perveniō, -venire, -vēni,
 -ventum

arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī,
 ascēsum
ask, rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; quaerō,
 -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum; **ask**
for, petō, -ere, petivī, petitum
assemble (*intransitive*), conveniō,
 -venire, -vēni, -ventum
at once, statim, *adv.*
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.
attack (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
avoid, vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

B

badge, insigne, insignis, N.
bank (*of a river*), ripa, -ae, F.
battle, proelium, -i, N.
be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
because, quod, *conj.*
before, ante, *prep. with acc.*
before, priusquam, *conj.*
beg for, petō, -ere, petivī, petitum
began, have begun, coepi, coepisse,
 coeptum (*perfect tenses only*)
begin, incipiō, -ere, incēpi, incep-
 tum; **begin battle**, proelium
 committere
behind, post, *prep. with acc.*
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, M. pl.
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
beyond, trāns, *prep. with acc.*
boast, glōrior, -ārī, glōriātus sum
boat, nāvis, nāvis, F.
body, corpus, corporis, N.
book, liber, libri, M.
boy, puer, puerī, M.

brave, fortis, forte
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
bring together, condūcō, -dūcere,
 -dūxi, -ductum
Britain, Great Britain, Britannia,
 -ae, F.
brother, frāter, frātris, M.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
burn, incendō, -ere, incendi, in-
 cēsum
but, sed, *conj.*
buy, emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptum
by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, M.
call, vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
 (name), appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
call together, convocō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
can, am able, possum, posse, potui
capture, expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
 capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum
carry, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
carry on, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum
cart, carrus, -i, M.
Cassius, Cassius, -i, M.
cattle, bovēs (*sing.* bōs, bovis),
 M. and F.
cause, causa, -ae, F.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M.
Celts, Celtae, -ārum, M. *pl.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
certain, quidam, quaedam, quod-
 dam or quiddam
certainly, certē, *adv.*
choose, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgi, dēlēc-
 tum

citizen, cīvis, cīvis, M., F.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, F.
collect (*trans.*), condūcō, -dūcere,
 -dūxi, -ductum; cōferō, -ferre,
 -tulī, -lātum
come, veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum
command, imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
command, be in command of,
 praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus
complain, queror, querī, questus
 sum
complete, perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
 -fectum; cōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
 -fectum
concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
conference, colloquium, -i, N.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victum
Considius, Cōnsidius, -i, M.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.
council, concilium, -i, N.
country, native country, patria,
 -ae, F.
courage, virtūs, virtūtis, F.
courage, animus, -i, M.
cross, trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum

D

danger, periculum, -i, N.
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um
dare, audeō, -ere, ausus sum
daughter, filia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, diēi, M. and F.
daybreak, prima lūx
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendi,
 dēfēsum
delay, mora, -ae, F.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
dependent, cliēns, clientis, M.

desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum
deserve, mereor, -ērī, meritus sum
desire, studeō, -ēre, -uī (*takes dative*); cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
difficult, difficilis, -e
difficulty, with **difficulty**, vix, *adv.*
disclose, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
distant, be **distant**, absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus
distinguished, clārus, -a, -um
ditch, fossa, -ae, F.
Diviciacus, Dīviciācus, -ī, M.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be done**, fiō, fierī, factus sum
draw up, instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum

E

each, as *pron.*, quisque, quidque; *adj.*, quisque, quaeque, quodque
easily, facile, *adv.*
easy, facilis, -e
enemy (*a public enemy*), hostis, hostis, M.; (*a personal enemy*), inimicus, -ī, M.
energetic, impiger, impigra, impigrum
energetically, impigrē, *adv.*
enough, satis, *adv. and indecl. noun*
enroll, cōscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, M.
every, omnis, -e; **everything**, omnia, -ium; **every day**, cotidiē, *adv.*
extend, pateō, -ēre, -uī
expect, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

F

fact (*thing*), rēs, rei, F.
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far, longē, *adv.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, M.
father, pater, patris, M.
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum
fear (*noun*), metus -ūs, M.
fear (*verb*), timeō, -ere, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum
few, pauci, -ae, -a, as *substantive*, pauci, -ōrum, M. pl.
field, ager, agri, M.
fierce, ferus, -a, -um
fiercely, ācriter, *adv.*
fight (*verb*), pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
fill, fill up, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
find, find out, reperiō, -īre, reperi, repertum
fire, ignis, ignis, M.
first, primus, -a, -um
first, at **first**, primō, *adv.*
five, quinque, *indecl. num.*
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
flight, fuga, -ae, F.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. pl.
forest, silva, -ae, F.
forget, obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum
former, pristinus, -a, -um
formerly, olim, *adv.*
formerly, antea, *adv.*
fort, castellum, -ī, N.
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum
fortune, fortūna, -ae, F.
four, quattuor, *indecl. num.*
friend, amicus, -ī, M.

friendship, amicitia, -ae, F.
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
from, ē, ex; ā, ab; dē, *preps. with abl.*
furnish, supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

G

gain possession of, potior, potiri, potitus sum
Gaius, Gāius, -ī, M.
gate, porta, -ae, F.
Gaul (*a country*), Gallia, -ae, F.
Gaul, a Gaul (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*), Gallus, -ī, M.
Geneva, Genava, -ae, F.
German, a German, Germānus, -ī, M.
gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
girl, puella, -ae, F.
give, dō, dare, dēdī, datum
go, eō, ire, ivi or iī, itum
go forth, exeō, -ire, -iī, -itum
good, bonus, -a, -um
grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
Great Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
greatly, magnopere, *adv.*

H

Haeduan, a Haeduan,
 Haeduus, -ī, M.
hand, manus, -ūs, F.
happen, accidō, -ere, accidī
happy, felix, felicitas
hasten, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
have, habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum
he, is
head, caput, capitis, N.
hear, audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum
height, altitūdō, -dinis, F.
help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, N.
help (*verb*), iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtum

Helvetians, the Helvetians, Helvētīi, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
her, reflexive, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, eius
herself, *see self*
high, altus, -a, -um
hill, collis, collis, M.
himself, *see self*
hinder, impediō, -ire, -ivī, -itum; dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
his, reflexive, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, eius
hold out, tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum or tēnsūm
home, domus, -ūs, F.
honorable, honestus, -a, -um
hope, spēs, speī, F.
horse, equus, -ī, M.
horseman, eques, equitis, M.
hostage, obses, obsidis, M.
hour, hōra, -ae, F.
hundred, one hundred, centum, *indecl. num.*

I

I, ego, *gen.*, mei
Iccius, Iccius, -ī, M.
if, si, *conj.*; **if not**, nisi
implore, implorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
in, in, *prep. with abl.*
incredible, incredibilis, -e
industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum
industriously, impigrē, *adv.*
infantry, cōpia pedestrēs, cōpiarum pedestrium, F.
inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs) facere
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī
inhabitant of a town, oppidānus, -ī, M.
injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*takes dative*)

injury, iniūria, -ae, f.
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
invite, invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, f.
island, insula, -ae, f.
it, id
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
its, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, eius
itself, *see self*
javelin, pilum, -i, N.
journey, iter, itineris, N.

K

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum
kind, benignus, -a, -um
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
know, *perf. of cognōscō*, -ere, cog-nōvī, cognitum; *sciō*, scire, scīvī, scitum; *intelligō*, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -i, M.
large, magnus, -a, -um
law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *dēpopulor*, -ārī, dēpopulātus sum
lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
lead back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
lead out, ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēduc-tum
leader, dux, ducis, M.
league together, coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
leave, relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relic-tum
legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.
letter, epistola, -ae, f.

liberty, libertās, libertātis, f.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -i, M.
life, vita, -ae, f.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēi, f.
live (*dwel*), habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
long, longus, -a, -um
long, for a long time, diū, *adv.*
lose, āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum
love, amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
Lucius, Lūcius, -i, M.
lurk, lateō, -ēre, -ui

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum;
make war on, bellum inferō, inferre, etc.
man, homō, hominis, M.; *vir*, virī, M.
many, multi, multae, multa; *pl. of* multus
march, iter, itineris, N.
Marius, Marius, -i, M.
master, dominus, -i, M.
meanwhile, intereā, *adv.*
messenger, nūntius, -i, M.
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um
mile, mille passūs or passuum; *pl.*, milia passuum
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
more, magis, *adv.*
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
much, multus, -a, -um; *when used with comparative*, multō, *abl. of neuter*
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, f.
my, mine, meus, -a, -um

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, N.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um

nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
native country, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um
neither (*conj.*), neque; **neither . . .**
 nor, neque . . . neque
neither (*of two*), neuter, -tra, -trum
Nervii, Nervii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
never, numquam, *adv.*
nevertheless, tamen, *adv.*
new, novus, -a, -um
next to, proximus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um
no one, nēmō; *dat.*, nēminī (*no gen.*)
not, nōn, *adv.*; *with subjunctive of desire*, nē
not yet, nōndum, *adv.*
nothing, nihil, *indeclinable*, *N.*
now, nunc, *adv.*
number, numerus, -i, *m.*

O

Ocelum, Ocelum, -i, *N.*
often, saepe, *adv.*
old, vetus, *gen.*, veteris
on, in, *prep. with abl.*
on account of, ob, *prep. with acc.*;
 propter, *prep. with acc.*
on this side of, citrā, *prep. with acc.*
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius; **one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, *m.*
other, the other (*of two*), alter, altera, alterum; **another**, alius, alia, aliud
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum

our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum
ourselves, *see self*
overhang, impendeō, -ēre
overrun, vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -i, *m.*
persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (*takes dative*)
place (*noun*), locus, -i, *m.* (*usually neuter in plural*)
place (*verb*), collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
plan, cōsiliū, -i, *N.*
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī (*takes dative*)
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um
point out, dēmōstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
power, potentia, -ae, *f.*; imperium, -i, *N.*
powerful, potēns, *gen.*, potentis
praise, laus, laudis, *f.*
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
prefer, mālō, mälle, mālui
prepare, comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
present, be present, adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus
present, dōnum, -i, *N.*
prisoner, captivus, -i, *m.*
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum
protect, tegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctum;
 cōservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
punishment, supplicium, -i, *N.*
purpose, for the purpose, causā *with genitive*

Q

quickly, celeriter, *adv.*

R

rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *M.*
reason, causa, -ae, *F.*
receive, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
reduce, redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāc-tum
refrain, supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum
regarding, dē, *prep. with abl.*
region, regiō, regiōnis, *F.*
reject, repudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mān-sum
remember, meminī, meminisse; re-minīscor, reminīscī
Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*
renew, renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
report, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, re-pulsum
residence, domicilium, -i, *N.*
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī (*takes dative*)
rest, the rest, reliquī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*
restore, restituō, -ere, restitui, restitūtum
restrain, contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum
return, redeō, -ire, -ii, -itum
reward, praemium, -i, *N.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, *M.*
river, flūmen, flūminis, *N.*
road, iter, itineris, *N.*
road, via, -ae, *F.*
Roman (*adj.*), Rōmānus, -a, -um
Roman, a Roman, Rōmānus, -i, *M.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *F.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *F.*
route, iter, itineris, *N.*

royal authority, royal power, rēg-num, -i, *N.*

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um
sailor, nauta, -ae, *M.*
same, idem, eadem, idem
say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum
school, schola, -ae, *F.*
scout, explorātor, -tōris, *M.*
second, secundus, -a, -um
see, videō, -ēre, vidī, visum
seem, videor, vidēri, visus sum
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
self, himself, herself, itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum; *reflexive*, sui
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
send ahead, praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
separate, dividō, -ere, divīsī, divi-sum
Sequani, Sēquani, -ōrum, *M. pl.*
set on fire, set fire to, incendō, -ere, incendi, incēnsus
set out, proficiscor, proficisci, pro-fectus sum
seven, septem, *indecl. num.*
several, complūrēs, -ium
Sextus, Sextus, -i, *M.*
she, ea
shield, scūtum, -i, *N.*
ship, nāvis, nāvis, *F.*
short, brevis, breve
signal, signum, -i, *N.*
since, cum, *conj.*
slaughter, caedēs, caedis, *F.*
slave, servus, -i, *M.*
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, *F.*
slowly, tardē, *adv.*
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, tam, *adv.*
so great, tantus, -a, -um

soldier, miles, militis, M.
some . . . others, alii . . . alii
some one, aliquis
sometimes, nōn numquam
son, filius, fili, M.
sound, sonus, -ī, M.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, F.
spend the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
spirit, animus, -ī, M.
spur, calcar, calcāris, N.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stāturus
state, civitās, -tātis, F.
station, collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
statue, statua, -ae, F.
still, tamen, *adv.*
stone, saxum, -ī, N.
street, via, -ae, F.
strength, virēs, virium (*pl. of vis*)
subdue, pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestās, -tātis, F.
supreme, summus, -a, -um (*superlative of superus*)
surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
surrender, trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditum; dēdō, -ere, dēdidi, dēditum
surround, circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*
sword, gladius, -ī, M.

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum
tall, altus, -a, -um
temple, templum, -ī, N.
ten, decem, *indecl. num.*
territories, finēs, -ium, M. (*pl. of finis*)
than, quam, *conj.*

that, *conj.*, ut; **that . . . not**, nē
that, *demonstrative*, ille, illa, illud (*unemphatic*), is, ea, id
their, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, eōrum, eārum
themselves, *reflexive*, suī
then, tum, *adv.*
there (*in that place*), ibi, *adv.*; (*to that place*), eō, *adv.*
thing, rēs, rei, F.
think, arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc
three, trēs, tria
three days, triduum, -ī, N.
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
time, tempus, temporis, N.
time for a long time, diū, *adv.*
tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um
to, ad, *prep. with acc.*
today, hodiē, *adv.*
tower, turris, turris, F.
town, oppidum, -ī, N.
townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
treachery, insidiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
trust, cōnfidō, -ere, cōnfisus sum
try, cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum; *exprior*, -īrī, expertus sum
two, duo, duae, duo
two days, biduum, -ī, N.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a

U

Ubi, Ubii, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
unexpectedly, imprōvisō, *adv.*
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um
unhappy, miser, misera, miserum
unknown, incognitus, -a, -um
unless, nisi, *conj.*
until, dum, *conj.*

unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō,
nōlle, nōlui
unwilling, invitus, -a, -um
urge, hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum
useful, ūtilis, -e

V

valley, vallēs, vallis, F.
Vesontio, Vesontiō, -ōnis, F.
veteran, veterānus, -a, -um
victory, victōria, -ae, F.
village, vīcus, -ī, M.
violence, vis, F.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

W

wage, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum
wait, wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
wall, mūrus, -ī, M.
wander, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
war, bellum, -ī, N.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
watch, vigilia, -ae, F.
water, aqua, -ae, F.
wave, flūctus, -ūs, M.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.
weapons, arma, -ōrum
weep, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum
what, interrog., pron., quid; *as*
adj., quis (quī), quae, quod
where, ubi, *adv.*

white, albus, -a, -um
who, what, interrog., quis, quid
who, which, what, *relative*, quī,
quae, quod
whole, tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr, *adv.*
when, eum
wide, lātus, -a, -um
widely, lātē, *adv.*
width, lātitudō, -dinis, F.
wing (*of an army*), cornū, -ūs, N.
winter (*verb*), spend the winter,
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
wish, cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitum
wish, volō, velle, volui
with, eum, *prep. with abl.*
withdraw, dēcēdō, -ere, dēcessī,
dēcessum; excēdō, -cēdere,
-cessī, -cessum
woman, fēmina, -ae, F.
work (*noun*), opus, operis, N.
work (*verb*), labōrō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum
wound (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum
wrong, iniūria, -ae, F.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.
you, tū, *singular*; vōs, *plural*.
your, yours, tuus, -a, -um, *refer-*
ring to one person; vester, ves-
tra, vestrum, *referring to more*
than one person.

INDEX

(Numbers refer to sections.)

- ABLATIVE, general use, 33.
 - absolute, 370.
 - of accompaniment, 104.
 - of cause, 449.
 - of comparison, 340.
 - of degree of difference, 346.
 - of description, 353.
 - of manner, 277.
 - of means, 130.
 - of place from which, 330.
 - of place in which, 110.
 - of respect, 366.
 - of route, 318.
 - of separation, 329.
 - of time, 211.
 - with *utro*, 419.
- ACCENT, 8.
- ACCUSATIVE:
 - as object, 11.
 - of duration, 177.
 - of extent, 312.
 - of place to which, 313.
 - with prepositions, 190.
- ADJECTIVES, agreement of, 55.
 - comparison of, 334.
 - position of, 19.
 - in the predicate, 20.
 - possessive, 83.
 - substantive use of, 201.
 - of the first and second declension in *-us*, 75.
 - of the first and second declension in *-er*, 81.
 - of the third declension, 276, 281.
 - with the genitive in *-ius*, 234.
- ADVERBS, formation of, 357.
 - comparison of, 361.
 - position of, 63.
- AGREEMENT:
 - of adjectives, 55.
 - of relative pronouns, 288.
 - of verbs, 44.
- aliquis*, declension of, 447.
- APPOSITION, 61.
 - case of nouns in, 62.
- ARTICLE not used in Latin, 13.
- BASE, of nouns, 38.
- coepti*, conjugation of, 427.
- COMMANDS, expressed by imperative, 402.
 - negative, 566.
- COMPARISON:
 - of adjectives, regular, 334, 338.
 - of adjectives, irregular, 344.
 - of adverbs, 361.
- COMPLEMENTARY infinitive, 272.
- CONDITIONAL clauses, defined, 570.
 - non-committal, 571.
 - future more vivid, 571b.
 - future less vivid, 581.
 - contrary to fact, 575, 576.
- CONJUGATION of regular verbs, how distinguished, 108.
- CORRELATIVE use of *hic* and *ille*, 116.
- cum* clauses:
 - adversative, 526.
 - causal, 520.
 - of description, 511.
- cum*, enclitic use of, 387.
- DATIVE:
 - as indirect object, 26.
 - with adjectives, 27.
 - of agent, 538.
 - with compound verbs, 324.
 - of possession, 325.
 - of purpose, 196.
 - of reference, 245.
 - with special verbs, 124.
 - position of, 28 (2).
- DEMONSTRATIVES, 89.
 - position of, 92.
- DEPONENT verbs, of the first and second conjugations, 414.

- of the third and fourth conjugations, 418.
- io* verbs of the third conjugation, 425.
- domus*, declension of, 298.
- duo*, declension of, 304.
- ENCLITIC use of *cum*, 387.
- eō*, conjugation of, 317.
- FAMILIAR Latin Phrases, 280.
- FEAR, subjunctive in expressions of, 531.
- ferō*, conjugation of, 406.
 - synopsis of, 410.
- FIFTH declension of nouns, 308.
- fiō*, conjugation of, 515.
- FIRST declension of nouns, 36.
- FIRST and second declension adjectives, 75, 81.
- FORMATION of Latin Words, 277.
- FOURTH declension of nouns, 292.
- FUTURE imperative, 586.
 - participle, active, 188.
 - participle, passive, 537.
- FUTURE perfect indicative, active, 171.
 - passive, 181.
- GENDER of nouns in the first declension, 53.
 - second declension, 59.
 - third declension, 255.
 - fourth declension, 292.
 - fifth declension, 308a.
- GENITIVE:
 - of description, 352.
 - of material, 521.
 - objective, 381.
 - of possession, 11.
 - of the whole, 265.
 - with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 543.
 - position of, 28 (1).
 - formation, in nouns in -*ius* and -*ium*, 76.
- GERUND, 552.
- GERUNDIVE, 557.
- hic*, declension of, 90.
 - correlative use of, 116.
- idem*, declension of, 264.
- ignis*, declension of, 260.
- ille*, declension of, 102.
 - correlative use of, 116.
- IMPERATIVE, present, 402.
 - future, 586.
- IMPERSONAL verbs, 438.
- INDIRECT discourse, 499, 503.
- INDIRECT object, 26.
- INDIRECT questions, 489.
- INFINITIVE, of regular verbs, 391.
 - of *sum* and *eō*, 396.
 - complementary, 272.
 - with subject accusative, 395.
- INTERROGATIVE particles, 432.
 - pronouns, 431.
- ipse*, declension of, 103.
- is*, declension of, 122.
- iste*, declension of, 582.
- iubeō*, construction with, 206.
- LOCATIVE, 299.
- mālō*, conjugation of, 542.
- nōlō*, conjugation of, 530.
- NOMINATIVE, as subject, 11.
 - as predicate, 50 (2).
- NUMERALS, cardinal, 303.
 - ordinal, 559.
- OBJECT, direct, 11.
 - indirect, 26.
- ORDER of words, 230.
- PARTICIPLES, present, 365.
 - past, 158, 159, 160.
 - future active, 188.
 - future passive, 537.
 - review of, 565.
- PASSIVE voice, 96.
 - endings of, 97.
- PAST perfect indicative active, 170.
 - subjunctive active, 493.
- PAST perfect indicative passive, 181.
 - subjunctive passive, 494.
- PERFECT indicative active, 146.
 - personal endings of, 147.
- PERFECT indicative passive, 175.
- PERFECT subjunctive active, 487.
- PERFECT subjunctive passive, 488.
- PERFECT stem, 148.
- PERFECT system, review of, 228, 229.

- PERSONAL** endings of the verb, active, 46.
passive, 97.
in the perfect indicative active, 147.
- PLACE** constructions, review of, 548.
- POSITION** of adjectives, 19.
of adverbs, 63.
of verb, 14.
- POSSESSIVES** of the third person, 139.
omission of, 140.
- possum**, conjugation of, 376.
synopsis of, 410.
- PREDICATE** adjectives, 20.
nouns, 21.
- PREPOSITIONS** with the accusative, 190.
review of cases with, 577.
as prefixes, 279.
- PREPOSITIONAL** phrases, order of words in, 283.
- PRESENT** stem, 46*b*.
- PRESENT** system, review of, 221-224.
- PRINCIPAL** parts of the verb, 164.
- PRONOUN**, interrogative, 431.
personal, 380.
reflexive, 385, 386.
relative, 287.
- PURPOSE** clauses, with *ut* and *nē*, 460.
relative, 465.
- que*, use of, 443.
- quidam*, declension of, 436.
- quisquam*, declension of, 448.
- quisque*, declension of, 437.
- REFLEXIVE** pronoun, 385-386.
possessive, 139.
- STEMS** of the verb, 166.
- SECOND** declension of nouns, 54, 59, 67.
- SEMI-deponents**, 442.
- SUBJUNCTIVE** mood, present tense of regular verbs, 455, 461.
past tense of regular verbs, 471.
perfect tense, 487, 488.
past perfect tense, 493, 494.
general use of, 456.
anticipatory, 476.
by attraction, 587.
in *cum* adversative clauses, 526.
in *cum* causal clauses, 520.
in *cum* descriptive clauses, 511.
in indirect discourse, 499.
in indirect questions, 489.
with expressions of fear, 531.
in substantive clauses of desire, 470.
in substantive clauses of fact, 516.
in purpose clauses, 460, 465.
in clauses of result, 483.
- SUPINE**, in *-um*, 547*a*.
in *-ū*, 547*b*.
- SYNOPSIS** of verbs, 182.
- TENSES**, relation of, in subordinate clauses, 510.
- THIRD** declension of nouns, consonant stems, 238, 244.
i-stems and mixed stems, 249, 250, 254.
exceptional nouns, 259, 260.
- THIRD** declension of adjectives, 276, 281.
trīs, declension of, 304.
turris, declension of, 260.
- ūtor*, with ablative, 419.
- VERBS**, agreement of, 44.
position of, 14.
- vīs*, declension of, 259.
- VOCATIVE**, 34.
position of, 35.
- volō*, conjugation of, 525.



To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40

--	--	--

478
34

Tx
47.41
\$4.6

Broth.
Eisen

NAME

DATE

597652

